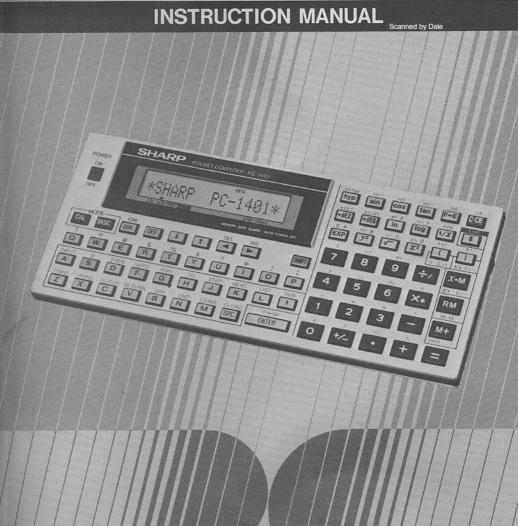


# POCKET COMPUTER

PC-1401 MODEL PC-1402



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
NTRODUCTORY NOTE	. 4
CHAPTER 1. HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL	. 5
CHAPTER 2. INTRODUCTION TO THE PC-1401/1402	. 7
Description of System	
Key and Switch Operations	. 8
Modes	
ALL RESET button	
Cell Replacement	. 14
CHAPTER 3. USING THE PC-1401/1402 AS A CALCULATOR	. 17
Start Up	
Shut Down	. 17
Auto Off	
Calculation in the CAL Mode	
How to Read the Display	
Basic Calculations	
Scientific Calculations	
Conversion between Decimal and Hex Numbers, and Hex Calculation	
Statistical Calculation	
1. One-variable Statistical Calculation	
2. Two-variable Statistics and Linear Regression	
Calculation Range	
Manual Calculation in the BASIC Mode	
How to Manually Calculate	
Recalling Entries	
Errors	
Negative Numbers	
Compound Calculations and Parentheses	
Using Variables in Calculations	
Chained Calculations	
Scientific Notation	
Limits	
Last Answer Feature	
Scientific Calculations (in the BASIC mode)	
Direct Calculation Feature	
Priority (in Manual Calculation)	
to the contract of the contrac	

#### **Table of Contents**

	Page
CHAPTER 4. CONCEPTS AND TERMS OF BASIC	70
String Constants	
Variables	71
Fixed Variables	72
Simple Variables	73
Array Variables	74
Variables in the Form of A ( )	77
Expressions	79
Numeric Operators	
String Expressions	79
Relational Expressions	
Logical Expressions	
Parentheses and Operator Precedence	
RUN mode	· · 83
Functions	· · 83
CHAPTER 5. PROGRAMMING THE PC-1401/1402	85
Programs	85
BASIC Statements	85
Line Numbers	85
BASIC Verbs	85
BASIC Commands	86
Modes	86
Beginning to Program on the PC-1401/1402	87
Example 1 — Entering and Running a Program	87
Example 2 — Editing a Program	88
Example 3 — Using Variables in Programming	90
Example 4 — More Complex Programming	
Storing Programs in the PC-1401/1402's Memory	93
CHAPTER 6. SHORTCUTS	94
The DEF Key and Labelled Programs	
Template	_
CHAPTER 7. USING THE CE-126P PRINTER/CASSETTE INTERFACE	0.0
Using the Printer	
Using the Cassette Interface	
Connecting the CE-126P to a Tape Recorder	
Connecting the CE-120P to a Tape Necorder	
Operating the Cassette Interface and Recorder	
Tape Notes	104

# **Table of Contents**

	Page	9
Commands Verbs Functions Pseudovariable Numeric Func	BASIC REFERENCE	3 3 2 3
Machine Opera BASIC Debug	TROUBLESHOOTING.       173         ation       173         ging       174         MAINTENANCE OF THE PC-1401/1402       175	3 4
APPENDICES Appendix A: Appendix B: Appendix C: Appendix D: Appendix E: Appendix F:	Error Messages	8 0 5 7
Appendix G:	Feature Comparison of the PC-1211, PC-1245, PC-1251, PC-1401/1402, and PC-1500	4 9
INDEX		O

# INTRODUCTORY NOTE

Welcome to the world of SHARP owners!

Few industries in the world today can match the rapid growth and technological advances being made in the field of personal computing. Computers which just a short time ago would have filled a huge room, required a Ph.D. to program, and cost thousands of dollars, now fit in the palm of your hand, are easily programmed, and cost so little that they are within the reach of nearly everyone.

Your new **SHARP PC-1401/1402** was designed to bring you all of the latest state of the art features of this computing revolution and it incorporates many advanced capabilities:

- \* SCIENTIFIC CALCULATOR It has been normal to use two different tasks, scientific calculation (including statistics) and computing, before the PC-1401/1402. But now only one tool is enough. The PC-1401/1402 operates both as a scientific calculator and a pocket computer incorporating 59 programmed scientific functions plus BASIC command keys for simple programming.
- \* MEMORY SAFE GUARD the **PC-1401/1402** remembers stored programs and variables even when you turn it off.
- \* Battery powered operation for true portability.
- \* AUTO POWER OFF function which conserves the batteries by turning the power off if no activity takes place within a specified time limit.
- \* An expanded version of BASIC which provides formatted output, twodimensional arrays, variable length strings, and many other advanced features.
- \* An optional printer/cassette interface (Model CE-126P) with the printer, you can have "hard-copies" of programs and data. The cassette interface lets you connect a cassette recorder to store programs and data to cassette recorder.

Congratulations on entering an exciting and enjoyable new world. We are sure that you will find this purchase one of the wisest you have ever made. The SHARP PC-1401/1402 is a powerful tool, designed to meet your specific mathematical, scientific, engineering, business and personal computing needs. With the SHARP PC-1401/1402 you can begin NOW providing the solutions you'll need tomorrow!

One of the models described in this manual may not be available in some countries.

# CHAPTER 1 HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

This manual is designed to introduce you to the capabilities and features of your PC-1401/1402 and to serve as a valuable reference tool. Whether you are a "first time user" or an "old hand" with computers, you should acquaint yourself with the PC-1401/1402 by reading and working through Chapters 2 through 6.

- \* Chapter 2 describes the physical features of the PC-1401/1402.
- \* Chapter 3 demonstrates the use of the PC-1401/1402 as a scientific calculator.
- \* Chapter 4 defines some terms and concepts which are essential for BASIC programming, and tells you about the special considerations of these concepts on the PC-1401/1402.
- \* Chapter 5 introduces you to BASIC programming on the PC-1401/1402, showing you how to enter, correct, and run programs.
- \* Chapter 6 discusses some shortcuts that make using your new computer easier and more enjoyable.

Experienced BASIC programmers may then read through Chapter 8 to learn the specific features of BASIC as implemented on the PC-1401/1402. Since every dialect of BASIC is somewhat different, read through this material at least once before starting serious programming.

Chapter 8 is a reference section covering all the verbs, commands, and functions of BASIC arranged in convenient alphabetical groupings.

If you have never programmed in BASIC before, we suggest that you buy a separate book on beginning BASIC programming or attend a BASIC class, before trying to work through these chapters. This manual is not intended to teach you how to program.

The remainder of the manual consists of:

- \* Chapter 7 Basic information on the optional CE-126P Printer/Cassette Interface.
- \* Chapter 9 A troubleshooting guide to help you solve some operating and programming problems.
- Chapter 10 The care and maintenance of your new computer.

Detailed Appendices provide you with useful charts, comparisons, and special discussions concerning the use and operation of the PC-1401/1402.

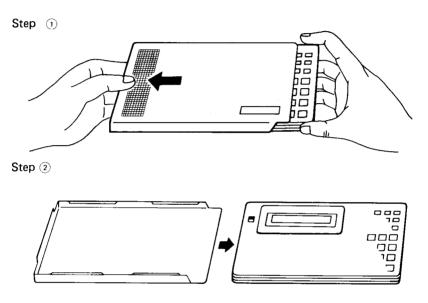
#### How to Use This Manual

# **Using the Hard Cover**

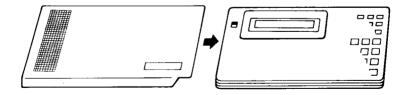
When the computer is not being used, mount the hard cover on the operation panel of the computer.

• When the computer is to be used.

To remove the hard cover from the computer, remove it as shown in figure below.



• When the computer is not used.



# CHAPTER 1 HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

This manual is designed to introduce you to the capabilities and features of your PC-1401/1402 and to serve as a valuable reference tool. Whether you are a "first time user" or an "old hand" with computers, you should acquaint yourself with the PC-1401/1402 by reading and working through Chapters 2 through 6.

- \* Chapter 2 describes the physical features of the PC-1401/1402.
- \* Chapter 3 demonstrates the use of the PC-1401/1402 as a scientific calculator.
- \* Chapter 4 defines some terms and concepts which are essential for BASIC programming, and tells you about the special considerations of these concepts on the PC-1401/1402.
- \* Chapter 5 introduces you to BASIC programming on the PC-1401/1402, showing you how to enter, correct, and run programs.
- \* Chapter 6 discusses some shortcuts that make using your new computer easier and more enjoyable.

Experienced BASIC programmers may then read through Chapter 8 to learn the specific features of BASIC as implemented on the PC-1401/1402. Since every dialect of BASIC is somewhat different, read through this material at least once before starting serious programming.

Chapter 8 is a reference section covering all the verbs, commands, and functions of BASIC arranged in convenient alphabetical groupings.

If you have never programmed in BASIC before, we suggest that you buy a separate book on beginning BASIC programming or attend a BASIC class, before trying to work through these chapters. This manual is not intended to teach you how to program.

The remainder of the manual consists of:

- \* Chapter 7 Basic information on the optional CE-126P Printer/Cassette Interface.
- \* Chapter 9 A troubleshooting guide to help you solve some operating and programming problems.
- Chapter 10 The care and maintenance of your new computer.

Detailed Appendices provide you with useful charts, comparisons, and special discussions concerning the use and operation of the PC-1401/1402.

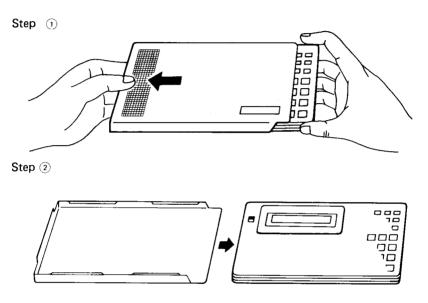
#### How to Use This Manual

# **Using the Hard Cover**

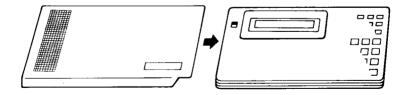
When the computer is not being used, mount the hard cover on the operation panel of the computer.

• When the computer is to be used.

To remove the hard cover from the computer, remove it as shown in figure below.



• When the computer is not used.

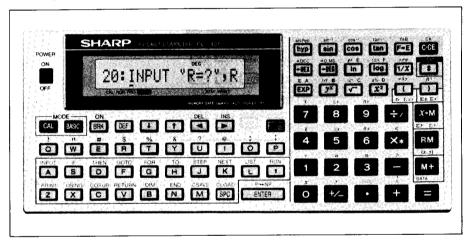


# CHAPTER 2 INTRODUCTION TO THE PC-1401/1402

# **Description of System**

The SHARP PC-1401/1402 system consists of:

- \* 76-character keyboard.
- \* 16-character display.
- \* Powerful BASIC in 40 K Bytes ROM.
- \* 8-bit CMOS processor.
- \* 4.2K Bytes RAM (PC-1401), 10.2K Bytes RAM (PC-1402)
- \* Option: CE-126P Printer/Cassette Interface



To familiarize you with the placement and functions of parts of the **PC-1401/1402** keyboard, we will now study each section of the keyboard. For now just locate the keys and read the description of each. In Chapter 3 we will begin using your new machine.

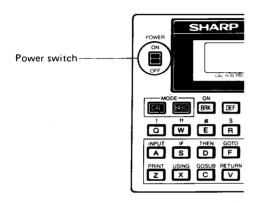
# **Key and Switch Operations**

The PC-1401/1402 has 76 keys and one slide switch on its panel. Each key function is identified by various characters, numbers or symbols labeled on or beside the keys.

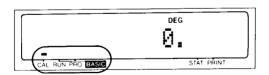
#### (1) Power on

To begin with, turn your computer on.

Set the POWER switch in the upper left corner of the computer to the ON position.



You will see the following initial information in the display:



A dash (=) indicator in the lower left area of the display shows the mode which the computer is now set. When this computer has just been turned on, it functions as a calculator. To show that the computer is set at the calculator mode, a dash indicator appears above the CAL (CALculator) label.

For calculator operation at the CAL mode, refer to CHAPTER 3, USING THE PC-1401/1402 AS A CALCULATOR.

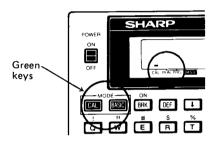
# Modes

The PC-1401/1402 can operate basically in the three different modes. One mode is the CAL mode, in which you can use your computer just like a calculator.

Another mode is the RUN mode, in which you can execute your program or manual calculation using BASIC commands.

The third mode is the PRO mode, which allows you to store your program into the computer or correct or amend a stored program.

Switching between these modes can be accomplished by the green **CAL** and **BASIC** keys. The selected mode is identified with a dash (=) indicator displayed just above the CAL, RUN, or PRO label in the lower left area of the display.



Now switch your computer off, then switch it on again. The CAL mode will be selected.

CÁL RỮU PÁO BASIC

If you press the RUN mode will be selected.

CAL PUNCÍA PASIA

If you press the RIV key when in the RUN mode, the PRO mode will be selected.

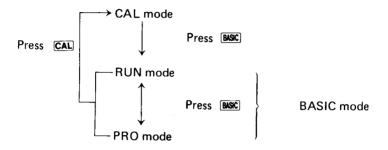


#### Introduction

Thus the RUN and PRO modes are selected alternately each time you press the BUSC key.

The computer will return to the CAL mode if you press the CAL key.

### Mode switching



#### 1. CAL mode

=

Now let's operate the keys.

Set the mode to CAL mode first.

In CAL mode the keys

and functions shown

at right can be used

for calculation.

Display

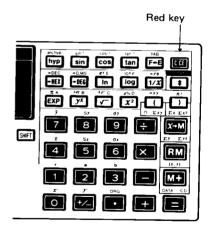
C:CE (Red key)  $\rightarrow$  0.

1 2  $\rightarrow$  12.

+  $\rightarrow$  12.

3  $\rightarrow$  3.

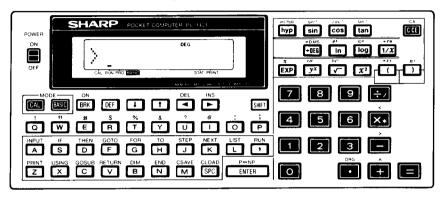
15.



#### 2. RUN and PRO modes

Change the mode to RUN or PRO mode by using the week, and press the following keys while watching the display:

In RUN and PRO modes the keys shown below can be used for calculations.



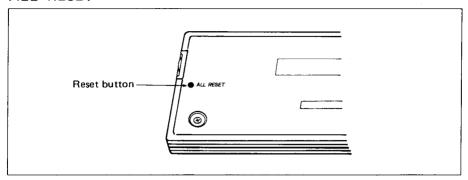
# Example:

If you press an alphabet or number key, the item denoted on the key will be entered. When you wish to enter the character or symbol denoted in brown above each key, press the yellow [SHIFT] key before operating the key.

The SHIFT key is used to enter the characters or symbols labeled in brown above each key that has two or three functions. If you repeatedly press the SHIFT key, the SHIFT symbol in the top of the display will go on and off. The SHIFT symbol indicates that the SHIFT key is activated and the characters labeled in brown can be entered.

11

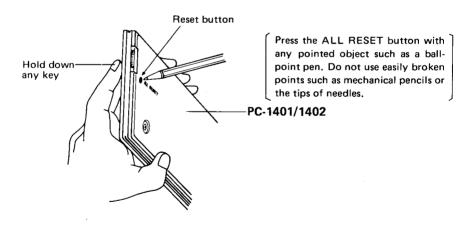
#### ALL RESET



Reset button. This button is used to reset the computer when C·CE or CA is not sufficient to correct the problem.

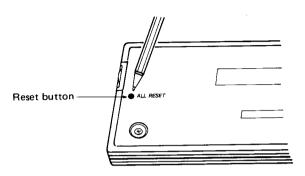
#### NOTE

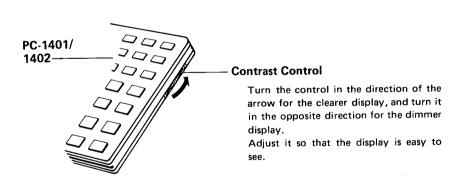
To reset the PC-1401/1402 hold down any key on the keyboard and simultaneously press the RESET button on the back. This preserves all programs and variables.



If you get no response from any key even when the above operation is performed, push RESET button without any key.

This operation will clear the programs and data, so do not press the RESET button without any key except when necessary.





#### Introduction

#### CELL REPLACEMENT

The PC-1401/1402 operates on the lithium cell alone.

When replacing the cells these cautionary instructions will eliminate many problems:

- Always replace both of the cells at the same time.
- Do not mix a new cell with a used cell.
- Use only: Lithium cell (type CR-2032), two required

#### INSTALLING THE CELLS

The display is dim and uneasy to see when viewed from the front even by turning the contrast control on the right of the computer counterclockwise as far as it goes. This indicates that the cell power is consumed. In this case, replace the cell promptly.

- (1) Turn off the computer by setting the power slide switch to the OFF position.
- (2) Remove the screws from the back cover with a small screw driver. (Fig. 1)

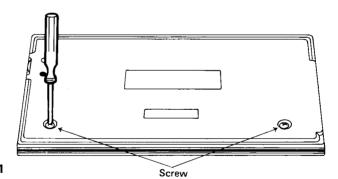


Fig. 1

(3) Remove the cell cover by sliding it in the direction of the arrow shown in Figure 2.

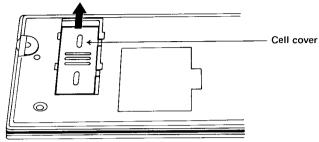


Fig. 2

(4) Replace the two cells. (Fig. 3)

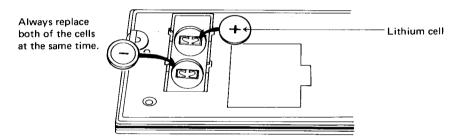


Fig. 3

- (5) Replace the cell cover by sliding it in the reverse direction of the arrow shown in Figure 2.
- (6) Hook the claws of the back cover into the slits of the computer proper. (Fig. 4)

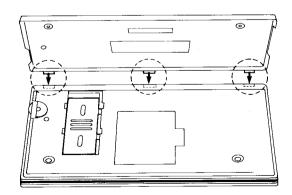


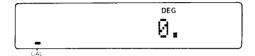
Fig. 4

#### Introduction

- (7) Push the back cover in slightly while replacing the screws.
- (8) Turn on the computer by setting the power slide switch to the ON position and press the RESET button to clear the computer.

  The display should look like this:

The display should look like this:



If the display is blank or displays any other symbol than " - 0.", remove the cells and install them again, then check the display.

#### NOTE:

Keeping a dead cell in the computer may result in damage to the computer from solvent leakage of the cell. Remove a dead cell promptly.

CAUTION: Keep cell out of reach of children.

# CHAPTER 3 USING THE PC-1401/1402 AS A CALCULATOR

Now that you are familiar with the layout and components of the SHARP PC-1401/1402, we will begin investigating the exciting capabilities of your new computer.

Because the **PC-1401/1402** allows you the full range of calculating functions, plus the increased power of BASIC programming abilities (useful in more complex calculations), it is commonly referred to as a "smart" calculator. That, of course, makes you a "smart" user!

(Before using the PC-1401/1402, be sure that the batteries are correctly installed.)

# Start Up

To turn ON the PC-1401/1402, slide the power switch up.

When you wish to use your **PC-1401/1402** as a scientific calculator, place the computer in the CAL mode. The CAL mode may be selected when the computer is switched on or the CAL key is pressed. Once the CAL mode has been selected, a dash ( **a** ) indicator will appear just above the CAL label in the lower left area of the display.



If the dash (—) indicator is at the RUN or PRO label, press the CAL key to select the CAL mode.

# **Shut Down**

To turn OFF the PC-1401/1402, slide the power switch to the OFF position.

When you turn OFF the machine, you clear (erase) the display.

# **Auto Off**

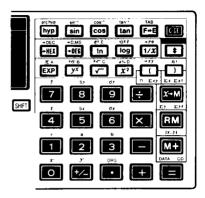
In order to conserve on battery wear, the PC-1401/1402 automatically powers down when no keys have been pressed for about 10 minutes. (Note: The PC-1401/1402 will not AUTO OFF while you are executing a program.)

To restart the computer after a AUTO OFF press the BRK key located at right hand side of the green keys.

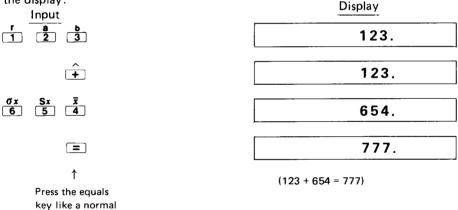
Please note that the CAL mode may be selected when the REAL key is pressed.

# Calculations in the CAL Mode

In the CAL mode the keys and functions shown at right can be used for calculation.



Now let us try some simple calculations. Press the following keys while watching the display:



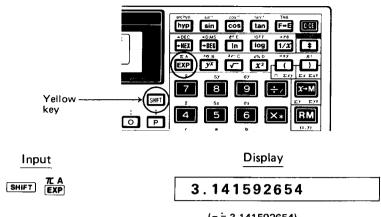
Did you get the correct answer? If you didn't, turn the computer off, then turn it on again and try the same calculation.

Now let us call the value of pi  $(\pi)$ .

Symbole " $\pi$ " is labeled just above the **EXP** key in brown. The functions identified by brown letters can be used by first pressing the yellow **SHIFT** key, and then pressing the required function key.

Now press SHIFT EXP .

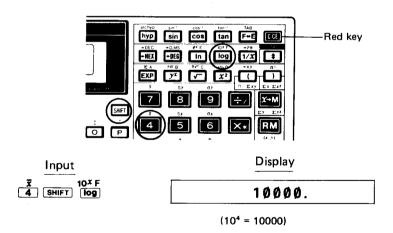
calculator.



 $(\pi = 3.141592654)$ 

What you see in the display is the value of  $\pi$ .

Next, let us compute  $10^4$ . For this calculation, you should use the function  $10^x$ . This function is also identified by a brown letter, so the SHIFT key must be pressed before the function key is pressed:

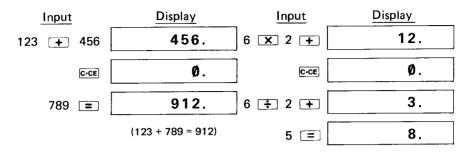


The following outlines the major key functions:

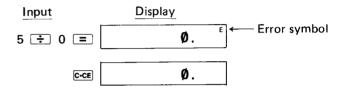
## \* C-CE (clear) (red key)

If this key is pressed immediately after numeric data is entered or the contents of the memory is recalled, that data will be cleared. In any other case, operation of the core key will clear the operators and/or numeric data which have been entered. The contents of the memory is not cleared with the core key operation.

#### Using as a Calculator



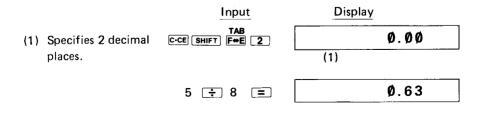
The G-CE key may also be used to clear an error.



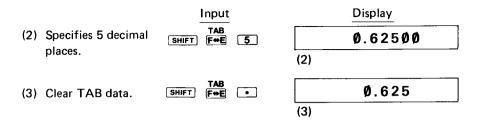
<sup>\*</sup> F\*E (display mode switch)

This key is used to switch the display mode from fixed point (normal mode) to floating point mode (exponent mode) or vice versa.

This key is used to specify the number of decimal places when used in conjunction with the numeric data key.

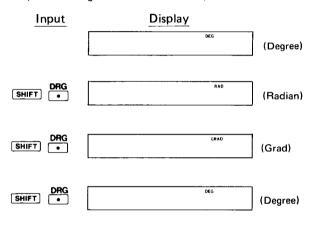


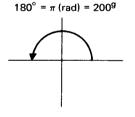
<sup>\*</sup> **TAB** (specifies the number of decimal places)



\* DRG (specifies angular data.)

This key is used to specify the angular units for data used in trigonometric functions, inverse trigonometric functions, or coordinate conversion.





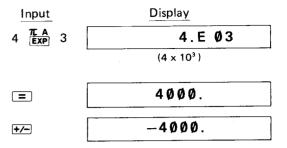
DEG: Degree [ º ]

RAD: Radian [rad]

GRAD: Grad [g]

\* 0 to 9 , • , EXP and +/\_

EXP : Used to enter floating decimal point data (the display shows "E" for floating decimal point data).

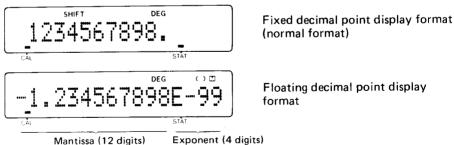


+/- : Used to enter negative numeric data (or to reverse the sign from negative to positive).

Input	Display
1.23 +/-	-1.23
EXP 5 +/-	-1.23E-Ø5
	$(-1.23 \times 10^{-5})$
	-0.0000123
+/-	0.0000123

# How to Read the Display

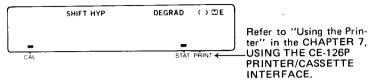
This section describes the display formats and symbols used in the CAL mode.



The PC-1401/1402's display has 16 digits. In the CAL mode, calculation results are normally displayed in fixed decimal point mode. If the result is smaller than 0.000000001 or greater than 9999999999 (greater than -0.000000001 or smaller than -999999999), it is displayed in floating decimal point mode. In floating decimal point mode, the mantissa is displayed to 12 significant digits, while the exponent is displayed to 4 significant digits. (including a decimal point, sign, and symbol)

#### Display symbols

The following describes the symbols and status marks shown in the display.



The CAL mode uses the symbols and marks shown above, whose meanings are described in the following:

- SHIFT: This word comes on when the SHIFT key is activated, indicating that the key functions identified by brown labels can be selected.
- HYP: This word comes on when the hyp key is pressed, indicating that a hyperbolic function has been selected. If SHIFT hyp are pressed, a phrase, SHIFT HYP, come on to indicate that an inverse hyperbolic function has been selected.

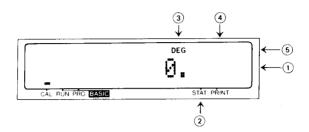
These words are selected sequently each time SHIFT • keys are RAD: operated. Each of these words indicates the angular units for trigonometric functions, inverse trigonometric functions, and coordinate conversion, respectively.

DEG: degree [°]
RAD: radian [rad]
GRAD: grad [g]
(180 deg. =  $\pi$  rad = 200<sup>9</sup>)

- ( ): This symbol comes on when parentheses are used in a calculation formula by means of the ( key.
- This symbol comes on when numeric data other than zero is stored in the calculation memory, to indicate that the memory is occupied.
- E: This symbol comes on if an error has occurred. The error can be cleared by operating the GCE key.
- STAT: Operation of the SHIFT keys activates a dash (-) indicator just above the STAT label in the lower right area of the display. The STAT stands for statistics, and indicates that the computer is in the statistical calculation mode.
- CAL: If a dash (-) indicator is displayed just above the CAL label, it indicates that the computer is in the CAL mode.

# **Basic Calculations**

This section describes the basic CAL mode operations for the **PC-1401/1402** computer. Before getting started, correctly set your computer. First, press the **CAL** key to place the computer in the CAL mode. Then press **C-CE**, and make sure that the display shows the following initial information.

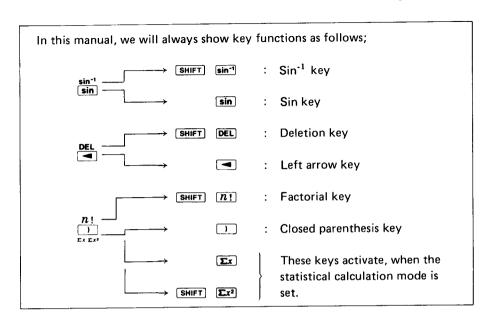


If not, read the following description and take the necessary action:

- 1 More than one zero is displayed (e.g. 0.00):

  The number of fractional digits is being specified. Press SHIFT TAB to clear this specification.
- 2 A dash (-) indicator is displayed at the STAT label:

  The computer is in the statistical calculation mode. Press SHIFT STAT to clear the dash indicator.
- 3 RAD or GRAD is displayed instead of DEG:
  The RAD, GRAD, and DEG indicate angular units for display data. Any of these symbols may be displayed unless a trigonometric function, inverse trigonometric function, or coordinate conversion is to be executed. Each of these symbols can be sequentially selected by operating SHIFT DRG.
- All symbols displayed in the upper area of the diplay can be cleared with the key, with the exception of those described in the above items (3) and (4).



Press the SHIFT TAB and • keys to set the floating decimal point system.

## 1. Addition, Subtraction

Key in the following:

12 + 45.6 - 32.1 + 789 - 741 + 213 =

Answer: 286.5

# 2. Multiplication, Division

841 X 586 ÷ .12 = Answer: 4106883.333 a. Key in the following:

b. Key in the following:

427 + 54 × 32 ÷ 7 - 39 × 2 = Answer: 595.8571429

Note that multiplication and division have priority to addition and subtraction. In other words multiplication and division will occur before addition and subtraction.

Constant Multiplication: The first number entered is the constant.

15 Answer: Key in: 3 X 5 = Answer: 30 Key in: 10 =

Constant Division: The number entered after the division sign is the constant.

5 15 ÷ 3 = Answer: Kev in:

Answer: 10 Key in: 30 =

#### Using as a Calculator

Note: The machine retains some calculations depending on priority level.

Accordingly, in successive calculation the operator of the last calculation and the last numerical value are handled as a calculating instruction and a constant for constant calculation, respectively.

 $a + b \times c =$ +bc(Constant addition) $a \times b \div c =$  $\div c$ (Constant division) $a \div b \times c =$  $\frac{a}{b} \times c$ (Constant multiplication) $a \times b - c =$ -c(Constant subtraction)

## 3. Memory Calculations

The independently accessible memory is indicated by the three keys:  $\boxed{x+M}$ ,  $\boxed{M+}$ . Before starting a calculation clear the memory by pressing  $\boxed{c-cc}$  and  $\boxed{x+M}$ .

Key in: 12 + 5 M+ Answer: 17

→ To subtract key in: 2 + 5 = +/- +/-

Answer to this equation: -7

Key in RM to recall memory: 10

Key in: 12 X 2 = x+M

Answer: 24 (Also takes place of 10 in memory)

Key in: 8 **÷** 2 **M+** 

Answer: 4 **RM**: 28

Note: • Memory calculations are impossible in the "STAT" mode. (Statistical

calculation mode)

When subtracting a number from the memory, press the →/- and which keys.

# Scientific Calculations in the CAL mode

To perform the trigonometric and inverse trigonometric and coordinate conversion, designate an angular mode. The angular mode is designated by the SHIFT and DRG keys.

# 1. Trigonometric functions

Put the angular mode at "DEG".

Calculate: Sin 30° + Cos 40° =

Key in the following: 30 sin + 40 cos =

Answer: 1.266044443

Calculate:  $\cos 0.25\pi$ 

Put the angular mode at "RAD".

Kev in:

.25  $\times$  SHIFT  $\pi$  = cos

Answer: 0.707106781

(Remember to use the SHIFT kev.)

# 2. Inverse Trigonometric Functions

Calculate:

Sin<sup>-1</sup> 0.5

Put the angular mode at "DEG".

Kev in:

5 SHIFT sin-1

Answer: 30

Calculate: Cos<sup>-1</sup> -1

Put the angular mode at "RAD".

Kev in: 1 +/- SHIFT cos<sup>-1</sup>

To enter a negative number, press the hey after numerals.

Answer: 3.141592654 (Value of  $\pi$ )

The answer of the inverse trigonometric functions will be displayed in the following area.

$$\theta = \sin^{-1} x, \quad \theta = \tan^{-1} x$$

DEG:  $-90 \le \theta \le 90$  [°]

RAD:  $-\frac{\pi}{2} \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{2}$  [rad]

GRAD:  $-100 \le \theta \le 100$  [g]

 $\theta = \cos^{-1} x$ 

DEG:  $0 \le \theta \le 180$  [°]

RAD:  $0 \le \theta \le \pi$  [rad]

GRAD:  $0 \le \theta \le 200$  [g]

# 3. Hyperbolic and Inverse Hyperbolic Functions

Calculate: Sinh 4

Key in:

4 hyp sin

Answer: 27.2899172

Calculate: Sinh -1 9

Key in:

9 SHIFT archye Sin

Answer: 2.893443986

# 4. Power Functions

Calculate: 20<sup>2</sup>

Key in: 20 [x2]

Answer: 400

Calculate: 33 and 34

Kev in:

3 [yx] 3 [=]

Key in:

 $3 y^x 4 =$ 

Answer: 27

Answer: 81

#### Using as a Calculator

#### 5. Roots

Calculate:  $\sqrt{25}$ 

Key in: 25 🔨

Answer: 5

Calculate: Cube root of 27 Key in: 27 SHIFT 34

Answer: 3

Calculate fourth root of 81

Key in: 81 SHIFT 47 4 =

Answer: 3

## 6. Logarithmic Functions

Calculate: In 21, log 173

Natural Logarithms: Key in: 21 In

Answer: 3.044522438

Common Logarithms: Key in: 173 log

Answer: 2.238046103

#### 7. Exponential Functions

Calculate: e3.0445

Key in: 3.0445 SHIFT ex

Answer: 20.99952881 (21 as in item "6" above)

Calculate: 10<sup>2,238</sup>

Key in: 2.238 SHIFT 10x

Answer: 172.9816359 (173 as in item "6" above)

## 8. Reciprocals

Calculate: 1/6 + 1/7

Key in:  $6 \frac{1}{x} + 7 \frac{1}{x} =$ 

Answer: 0.309523809

#### 9. Factorial

Calculate: 69!

Key in: 69 SHIFT n!

Answer: 1.711224524E 98 (1.711224524 x 10<sup>98</sup>)

Note that the Error section deals with the calculation limits of the calculator.

Calculate:  $_{8}P_{3} = \frac{8!}{(8-3)!} =$ 

8 SHIFT  $n! \div (8 - 3)$  SHIFT n! =Kev in:

Answer: 336

#### 10. Percent calculations

Calculate: 45% of 2,780 (2,780 x  $\frac{45}{100}$ )

2780 X 45 SHIFT 4% Kev in:

1251 Answer:

Calculate:  $\frac{547 - 473}{473} \times 100$ 

547 - 473 SHIFT **△**% Key in:

Answer: 15.6448203

#### 11. Angle/Time conversions

To convert an angle given as degrees and minutes/seconds to its decimal equivalent, it must be entered as integer and decimal respectively.

Convert 12°47'52" to its decimal equivalent

12.4752 -DEG Kev in:

Answer: 12.79777778

When converting decimal degrees to the equivalent degrees/minutes/seconds, the answer is broken down: integer portion = degrees; 1st and 2nd decimal digits = minutes; 3rd and 4th digits = seconds; and the 5th through end decimal digits are decimal seconds.

Convert 24.7256 to its degree/minute/second equivalent

Key in: 24.7256 SHIFT →DMS

24.433216 or 24°43'32" Answer:

A horse has track times of 2 minutes 25 seconds, 2 minutes 38 seconds, and 2 minutes 22 seconds. What is the average running time?

.0225 FDEG + .0238 FDEG + .0222 FDEG = Kev in:

Answer 1: 0.123611111 ÷ 3 =

Key in:

Answer 2: 0.041203703

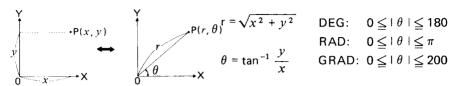
SHIFT +D.MS

Key in: Answer 3: 0.022833333 or the average time is 2 minutes 28 seconds

#### Using as a Calculator

#### 12. Coordinate Conversion

Converting rectangular coordinates to polar  $(x, y \rightarrow r, \theta)$ 



Solve for x = 6 and y = 4 Mode = DEG Key in: 6 \$ 4 SHIFT • 70

Answer: 7.211102551 (r)

Key in:

Answer: 33.69006753 ( $\theta$ )

Calculate the magnitude and direction (phase) in a vector i = 12 + j9

Key in: 12 **♣** 9 **SHIFT** • **re** 

Answer: 15 (r)
Key in:

Answer:  $36.86989765 (\theta)$ 

Converting polar coordinates to rectangular  $(r, \theta \rightarrow x, y)$ 

Solve for P (14,  $\pi/3$ ), r = 14  $\theta = \pi/3$ 

Mode = RAD Key in SHIFT  $\pi$   $\div$  3 =  $\bullet$  14  $\bullet$  SHIFT  $\bullet xy$ 

Answer: 7.000000002 (x)

Key in:

Answer: 12.12435565 (y) In the above example  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$  is inputted first and is replaced with r = 14

by pushing the **\$** key after r is inputted.

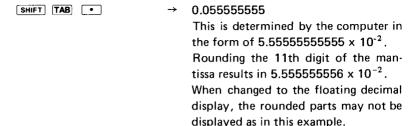
# **Use of Parenthesis**

The parentheses keys are needed to cluster together a series of operations when it is necessary to override the priority system of algebra. When parentheses are in use on the PC-1401/1402 the symbol "( )" will appear in the display.

Calculations in parentheses have priority over other calculations. Parentheses in the CAL mode can be used up to 15 times in a single level. Calculations within the inner-most set of parentheses will be calculated first.

Calculate:	12 + 42 ÷ (8	<b> 6)</b>		
Key in:	12 + 42 + ( 8 - 6 ) =			
Answer:	33			
Calculate:	126 ÷ [ (3 + 4	$4) \times (3 - 1)$		
Key in:	126 🛨 🗆	<u> </u>	+ 4	1 ) X ( 3 - 1
Answer:	9			
Note: The	keys l	ocated just bef	ore t	he = or M+ key can be omitted.
Decimal	Places			
The SHIFT	and <b>TAB</b> k	eys are used to	spe	cify the number of decimal digits in the
calculation	result. The r	number of plac	es af	ter the decimal point is specified by the
				r the SHIFT and TAB keys. To clear
the designa	tion of the de	cimal places, pi	ess t	he SHIFT TAB and • keys.
SHIFT TAB	Ø →	Designates 0 d	ecim	al place
UMIT (TAB	, <b>E</b>	-		ace is rounded.)
SHIFT TAB	<b>1</b> →	Designates 1 d	ecim	al place.
		(The 2nd decident	mal p	place is rounded.)
}				
SHIFT TAB	9 →	Designates 9 d	ecim	al places.
		(The 10th dec	imal	place is rounded.)
SHIFT TAB	j • →	Designates the	flo	ating decimal point system. (Decimal
		place designat		
		(The 11th digi	t fro	m the upper digit is rounded.)
Example:	SHIFT TAB	9		
<b>L</b> itarii pioi	• 5 ÷	9 =	$\rightarrow$	0.05555556
				(The 10th decimal place is rounded.)
	F#E		$\rightarrow$	5.55555556E-02
				(The 10th decimal place of the man-
				tissa is rounded.)
	SHIFT TAB	3	$\rightarrow$	5.556E-02
				(The 4th decimal place of the mantissa
				is rounded.)
	F#E		$\rightarrow$	0.056

#### Using as a Calculator



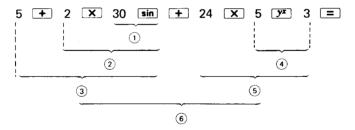
# Priority level in the CAL Mode

The machine, provided with a function that judges the priority level of individual calculations, permits keys to be operated according to a given mathematical formula. The following shows the priority level of individual calculations.

#### Level Operations

- (1) Functions, such as sin,  $x^2$
- (2)  $y^x$ ,  $\sqrt[x]{y}$
- (3)  $x_{i} \div$  (Calculations which are given the same priority level are
- (4) +, executed in sequence.)
- (5) =, M+,  $\Delta$ %

Ex. Key operation and sequence of calculation in  $5 + 2 \times \sin 30 + 24 \times 5^3 =$  Mode = DEG



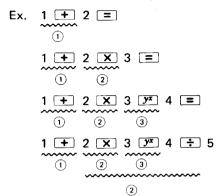
The numbers  $\odot \sim \odot$  indicates the sequence in which the calculations are carried out.

When calculations are executed from higher priority one in sequence a lower priority one must be reserved. The machine is provided with memories of eight levels to meet such requirement.

As the memories can also be used in a calculation including parentheses, calculation can be performed according to a given mathematical formula unless parentheses and pending operation exceed 8 levels in total.

• Single-variable functions are calculated immediately after key operation without being retained.  $(x^2, 1/x, n!, \rightarrow DEG, \rightarrow DMS, etc.)$ 

( Calculation without using parentheses )



Pending of 1 level

Pending of 2 levels

Pending of 3 levels

With the pressed, 3 calculations remain pending. Pressing the + key executes the calculations of "y" highest in priority level and "x" identical in priority level. After the + key is pressed, the other 2 calculations will remain pending.

(Calculation using parentheses)

Ex. i) 1 + 2 x 3 y ( 4 ÷ 5

4 numerals and calculation instructions are left pending.

ii) 1 + 2 × 1 3 - 4 ÷ 5 1

Parentheses can be used unless pending calculations exceed 8. However, parentheses can be continuously used up to 15 times.

Ex. 
$$a \times (((b - c \times (((d + e) \times f) \div g \dots) + g + f))))$$

Parentheses, if continued, can be used up to 15.

# Conversion between Decimal and Hex Numbers, and Hex Calculation

( -HEX , -DEC )

\*\*HEX : Allows you to convert a decimal number into hexadecimal number and, at the same times, place the **PC-1401/1402** in the HEX mode (display shows the symbol, HEX).

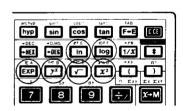
SHIFT FOEC: Allows you to convert a hexadecimal number into decimal number and clear the HEX mode (symbol HEX disappears from the display).

The hexadecimal notation is one of the numeration systems broadly used in the computer field. The radix for the hex notation consists of numerals 0 through 9 and the uppercase letters A through F which are used in place of 10 through 15 in the decimal notation.

(Hexadecimal)	(Decimal)	
Α		10
ſ		ſ
F		15

Hex numbers A through F can be entered by first placing your computer in the Hex mode (with \*\*\*\* key), pressing the respective keys shown in figure.

The symbol HEX indicates that the numeric data shown in the display is a hex number, and that you can perform any arithmetic operation on hex numbers.



To clear the Hex mode, operate SHIFT -DEC . You cannot clear it with the C-CE key.

## **Decimal to Hex Conversion**

(Example) Convert a decimal number 30, into a hex number:

Key in: 30 HEX Answer: 1E. HEX

To perform a new conversion, temporarily clear the HEX mode with SHIFT -DEC .

	Osing as a Calculato				
(Example)	Convert a decimal number, —2, into a hex number:  Temporarily clear the Hex mode with C-CE SHIFT -DEC.				
	Key in: 2 +/- ••EX				
	Answer: FFFFFFFE. HEX				
	<ul> <li>If you attempt decimal-to-hex conversion on a negative decimal number, the computer internally performs "two's complement" calculation and shows the result in 16's complement.</li> <li>The +/- key may be used to reverse the polarity of the numeric data now in the display. If the polarity of a positive hex number is reversed, its complement will be obtained in the display.</li> </ul>				
(Example)	Convert a decimal number, 123.4, into hex number.				
	Key in: SHIFT FDEC Answer: 7B. HEX				
	<ul> <li>If a decimal number having a fractional part is converted into a hex number, the fractional part is rounded down and only the integer part is converted into a hex number.</li> </ul>				
Hex to Decim	al Conversion				
(Example)	Convert hex 2BC into decimal				
	Key in: C-CE -HEX 2 B C SHIFT -DEC				
	Answer: <b>700</b> .				
(Example)	Convert hex FFFFFFFF12 into decimal:  Key in: ©-CE				
	Answer: FFFFFFF12. HEX				

• If a hex number between FFFFFFFFF and FDABF41C01 is converted into decimal, the result will be a negative decimal number.

-238.

### **Hexadecimal Calculation**

Hexadecimal calculation can be done after your computer is placed in the Hex mode. Press CCE HEX and the symbol HEX displayed.

(Example)	A4 + BA =		
	Key in: A4 + BA =		
	Answer:	15 E.	HEX
/5	0 2	(350 in decimal)	·
(Example)	8 x 3 =		
	Key in: 8 🕱 3 =		
	Answer:	18.	HEX
		(24 in decimal)	
(Example)	$(12 + D) \times B =$		
	Key in: C-CE ( 12 + D )	<b>x</b> B =	
	Answer:	155.	HEX
		(341 in decimal)	
(Example)	43A - 3CB =		
	+) A38 - 2FB =		
	(Total)		
	Key in: C-CE <b>x+M</b>		
	43A - 3CB M+		
	Answer:	6F.	HEX
	A 3 8 🖃 2 F B M+		
	Answer:	73D.	HEX
	RM		
	Answer:	7AC.	HEX

For hex calculation, you should note the following points:

- Hex calculation ignores all fractional parts. This means that the decimal point key, , is meaningless for hex calculation.
- If an intermediate result of a hex calculation includes a fractional part, an error will result.

(Example) B 😩 3 🕱 ... Error (Symbol "E" is displayed.)

If a fractional part is in the final result, it will be truncated and only the integer part will be displayed.

(Example) B 🛨 3 😑 ... 3. HEX

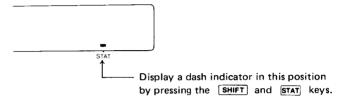
• In the Hex mode, the +/- key may be used to obtain a complement for the hex number now shown in the display.

- In the Hex mode, the function keys on the computer are not usable.
- When the computer is in the Statistic mode (a dash (=) indicator is shown at the STAT label), conversion between decimal and hex numbers or hex computation is not executable.

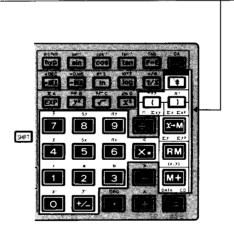
### Statistical calculation

To perform statistical calculation, press the SHIFT and STAT (under a red G-CE key) keys in the CAL Mode, a dash (=) indicator will appear just above the "STAT" label in the lower right area of the display. The "STAT" stands for STATistics, and indicates that the computer is in the statistical calculation mode.

When the computer is in the RUN or PRO mode, press the CAL and then SHIFT STAT .



### Keys that are used mainly in the statistical calculation mode.



Intermediate results can be obtained and then additional data may be added.

When the statistical calculation is performed, the following statistics are automatically stored in the fixed variables used in the BASIC mode (memories). And these statistics can be used in the BASIC mode because these statistics are retained even when the statistical calculation mode is reset. These statistics are cleared when the current statistical calculation mode is reset and then this mode is set again.

Memory	Z	Υ	х	w	V	U
Statistics	n	$\Sigma x$	$\Sigma x^2$	$\sum xy$	$\Sigma y$	Σy <sup>2</sup>

To clear previous statistical inputs and calculations, reset the statistical calculation mode once and set this mode again. Otherwise when a new statistical calculation is performed, incorrect answer will be obtained.

When the statistical calculation mode is set, the followings can not be performed:

- \* Memory calculation
- \* Calculation with parentheses
- \* Coordinate conversion
- \* Hexadecimal ←→ decimal notation conversions
- \* Hexadecimal calculation

#### CAUTION

Of the statistical data obtained in the CAL mode, the following data is stored in the BASIC mode memory locations (U to Z).

Memory	Z	Y	х	w	٧	U
Statistics	n	$\Sigma x$	$\Sigma x^2$	Σχγ	$\Sigma y$	$\Sigma y^2$

When performing calculations using this statistical data, use the RUN mode.

For example, to determine the sum of squares (S<sup>2</sup>) of four pieces of data, 205, 221, 226, and 220, operate your computer as follows:

$$S^{2} = \sum (x - \bar{x})^{2}$$
$$= \sum x^{2} - n\bar{x}^{2}$$
$$= \sum x^{2} - \frac{1}{n} (\sum x)^{2}$$

• Enter the data in the CAL mode.

CAL SHIFT STAT

**Ø** .

205 DATA 221 DATA

226 DATA 220 DATA

4.

• Change the mode to the RUN and calculate the S<sup>2</sup>.

BASIC



X - Y X\* Y ÷/ Z

$$X - Y * Y/Z_{-}$$

ENTER

246.

#### 1. One-variable statistical calculation

Calculate the following statistics.

- Number of samples (1) n:
- (2)  $\Sigma x$ : Total of samples
- (3)  $\Sigma x^2$ : Sum of squares of samples (4)  $\bar{x}$ : Mean value of samples  $\bar{x} = \frac{\Sigma x}{n}$
- Standard deviation with population parameter taken to be "n-1". (5) Sx:

$$Sx = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n-1}}$$

(Used to estimate the standard deviation of population from the sample data extracted from that population.)

Standard deviation with population parameter taken to be "n". (6)  $\sigma x$ :

$$\sigma x = \sqrt{\frac{\sum x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n}}$$

(Used when all populations are taken to be sample data or when finding the standard deviation of population with sample taken to be a population.)

Data for one-variable statistic calculations are inputted by the following operations

- (1) Data DATA
- Frequency DATA (when two or more of the same data are (2) Data X inputted)

### Example:

Calculate standard deviation, mean, and variance  $(Sx)^2$  from the following data: Set the computer at the statistical calculation mode.

Value	35	45	55	65
Frequency	1	1	5	2

As each sample is entered the number of that sample will a appear on the right hand side of the display.

	Key in:	Display
35	DATA	1.
45	DATA	2.
55 x 5	DATA	7.
65 x 2	DATA	9.

Press SHIFT TAB 2 (Set the Decimal at 2)

	Key in:	Display:
Mean:	SHIFT X	53.89
Standard Deviation:	SHIFT Sx	9.28
Variance:	<b>x</b> <sup>2</sup>	86.11

Correct Data (CD): The last entry above is an error and must be changed to 60 x 2.

Key in:				Display:
65	X	2	SHIFT CD	7.00
60	X	2	DATA	9.00

### 2. Two-variable Statistics and Linear Regression

In addition to the same statistical functions for y as for x in single-variable statistics, the sum of the products of samples  $\Sigma xy$  is added in two-variable statistics. Two-variable statistics makes possible the development of a relationship (correlation) between two set of data. Each pair of data has an x and y value. From these sets of data a line of regression can be established. The relationship of the two sets of data by use of the straight line method is called "Linear Regression". In Linear Regression there are three important value; r, a, and b.

The equation of the straight line is y = a + bx, where a is the point at which the line crosses the Y-axis and b is the slope of the line.

The correlation coefficient r shows the relationship between two set of data. A perfect correlation between two values is an r equal to 1 (-1 is a perfect negative correlation); in other words, by knowing the value of one variable you can predict with 100% accuracy the value of the other variable. The further the value of r is from 1, the less reliable will your predictions be. The following table can be used as a set of definitions of the values of the correlation coefficient:

	Value of $r$	Call it
	+0.80 to + 1.00	Extra High
Positive	+0.60 to +0.80	High
Correlation	+0.40 to +0.60	Moderate
	+0.20 to +0.40	Low
	-0.20 to $+0.20$	Nil
	-0.20 to -0.40	Low
Negative	-0.40 to -0.60	Moderate
Correlation	-0.60 to -0.80	High
	−0.80 to −1.00	Extra High

r Correlation coefficient

Example 1: If we know a student's mark in mathematics, can we predict the mark in English?

The exam marks for five students chosen at random are given in the following table:

Student No.		Mark in Mat	h.	Mark in English
1		82		79
2		53		50
3		61		87
4		. 74		96
5		51		73
6		51		73
	Key in:		Display	<u>,                                     </u>
82 (x.y	79 DATA	]	1.	
53 (x.y)	50 DATA	)	2.	
61 (x.y)	87 DATA	]	3.	
74  (x,y)	96 DATA		4.	
51 (x.y)	73 <b>X</b>	2 DATA	6.	(Note: to input multiple identical samples proceed as indicated)

Press	SHIFT TAB	2	
	SHIFT	0.57	
	SHIFT 8	34.26	(y-axis)
	SHIFT <b>b</b>	0.68	(slope)

The value of r of .57 indicates that the correlation is moderate. The equation for the straight line for this data is y = 34.26 + 0.68x.

If we had a student whose mark in mathematics was 90, based on this analysis, the student would have a mark in English of 95.

Example 2: Is weight a good predictor of longevity among men 65 years of age? In 1950, 10 men, each six feet tall, were selected for an experiment to determine if their weight effected their life span.

Sample	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Age at death	72	67	69	85	91	68	77	74	70	82
Weight at age 65	185	226	200	169	170	195	175	174	198	172

Key in: STAT Mode, SHIFT TAB .

72 (x.y) 185 DATA 67 (x.y) 226 DATA

(Continue to place in all data)

SHIFT | -0.792926167

r indicates a relatively high negative correlation. Higher weight indicates a shorter life span. To graph the regression line, a and b are used.

SHIFT **a** 321.9292125 (y-axis)

SHIFT **b** -1.795088908 (slope)

Predict the age of death of a 6-foot man weighing 190 pounds in 1950.

190 SHIFT x' 73.5 years

To reach age 90, what should a man's weight be in 1960?

90 SHIFT y' 160.4 pounds

To reach age 150, what should a man's weight be? Obviously the answer will make no sense indicating the danger of carrying a straight-line extrapolation too far.

### Calculation range

Four arithmetic calculations:

1st operand, 2nd operand and

calculation result :  $\pm 1 \times 10^{-99} \sim \pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{99}$  and 0

## Scientific functions:

Functions	Dynamic range	Note
sin <i>x</i> cos <i>x</i> tan <i>x</i>	DEG: $ x  < 1 \times 10^{10}$ RAD: $ x  < \frac{\pi}{180} \times 10^{10}$ GRAD: $ x  < \frac{10}{9} \times 10^{10}$ In tan $x$ , however, the following cases are excluded. DEG: $ x  = 90 (2n - 1)$ RAD: $ x  = \frac{\pi}{2} (2n - 1)$ n = integer GRAD: $ x  = 100 (2n - 1)$	
sin <sup>-1</sup> x cos <sup>-1</sup> x	$-1 \le x \le 1$	
tan <sup>-1</sup> x	$ x  < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
In x log x	$1 \times 10^{-99} \le x < 1 \times 10^{100}$	$(\ln x = \log_{\mathbf{e}} x)$
e <sup>x</sup>	$-1 \times 10^{100} < x \le 230.2585092$	(e ≒ 2.718281828)
10 <sup>x</sup>	$-1 \times 10^{100} < x < 100$	
y×	• $y > 0$ : -1 x 10 <sup>100</sup> < $x \log y < 100$ • $y = 0$ : $x > 0$ • $y < 0$ : $x$ : integer or $\frac{1}{x}$ : odd number -1 x 10 <sup>100</sup> < $x \log  y  < 100$	$y^X = 10^{X \cdot \log y}$
<sup>x</sup> √y	• $y > 0$ : $-1 \times 10^{100} < \frac{1}{x} \log y < 100, x \neq 0$ • $y = 0$ : $x > 0$ • $y < 0$ : $x \text{ or } \frac{1}{x}$ : integer $(x \neq 0)$ $-1 \times 10^{100} < \frac{1}{x} \log  y  < 100$	$\sqrt[x]{y} = 10^{\frac{1}{x} \cdot \log y}$
$\sqrt[3]{x}$	x   < 1 x 10 <sup>100</sup>	
sinh x cosh x tanh x	$-227.9559242 \le x \le 230.2585092$	
sinh <sup>-1</sup> x	x   < 1 x 10 <sup>50</sup>	
cosh⁻¹ x	$1 \le x < 1 \times 10^{50}$	
tanh <sup>-1</sup> x	x <1	

Functions Dynamic range		Dynamic range	Note
$\sqrt{x}$		$0 \le x < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
x2		x   < 1 x 10 <sup>50</sup>	
$\frac{1}{x}$		x   < 1 x 10 <sup>100</sup>	
$\overline{x}$		<i>x</i> ≠ 0	
n!		$0 \le n \le 69$ (n: Integer)	
→DE	G	$ x  < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
→ DI	ИS	$ x  < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
HEX -	→ DEC	$0 \le x \le 2540$ BE3FF FDABF41C01 $\le x \le FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF$	x is an integer in HEX mode
DEC -	→ HEX	$ x  \le 9999999999999999999999999999999999$	x is an integer.
<i>x</i> , <i>y</i> →	r, θ	$\frac{(x^2 + y^2) < 1 \times 10^{100}}{\frac{y}{x}} < 1 \times 10^{100}$	$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}$
r, θ →	x, y	$r < 1 \times 10^{100}$ , $  r \sin \theta   < 1 \times 10^{100}$ $  r \cos \theta   < 1 \times 10^{100}$	$x = r \cos \theta$ $y = r \sin \theta$ $\theta \text{ is in the same condition as } x$ of $\sin x$ , $\cos x$ .
	Data CD	$ x  < 1 \times 10^{50}$ $ y  < 1 \times 10^{50}$ $ \Sigma x  < 1 \times 10^{100}$ $\Sigma x^{2} < 1 \times 10^{100}$ $ \Sigma y  < 1 \times 10^{100}$ $\Sigma y^{2} < 1 \times 10^{100}$ $ \Sigma xy  < 1 \times 10^{100}$ $ \Sigma xy  < 1 \times 10^{100}$ $ \Sigma xy  < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
	x	n ≠ 0	
Statistical calculation	Sx	$n \neq 1$ $0 \le \frac{\sum x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n - 1} < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
σx ÿ			
		n ≠ 0	
	Sy	$n \neq 1$ $0 \le \frac{\Sigma y^2 - n\bar{y}^2}{n-1} < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
	σχ	$n \neq 0$ $0 \le \frac{\Sigma y^2 - n\bar{y}^2}{n} < 1 \times 10^{100}$	

Functio	ons	Dynamic range	Note
	r		
Statistical calculation	b	$ \begin{vmatrix} n \neq 0 \\ 0 <   \Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2  < 1 \times 10^{100} \\   \Sigma xy - \frac{\Sigma x \cdot \Sigma y}{n}   < 1 \times 10^{100} \\   \frac{\Sigma xy - \frac{\Sigma x \cdot \Sigma y}{n}}{\Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}   < 1 \times 10^{100} \end{vmatrix} $	
	а	a is the same condition as b, and $\mid \bar{y} - b\bar{x} \mid < 1 \times 10^{100}$	
	y'	a + bx   < 1 x 10 <sup>100</sup>	
	x'	$\left \frac{y-a}{b}\right  < 1 \times 10^{100}$	

For the accuracy of functions other than shown above, the error is  $\pm 1$  at the 10th digits, as a rule. (In the scientific notation system, the error is  $\pm 1$  at the lowest digit of mantissa display.)

However, the accuracy will become low around-singular points and inflection points of functions.

Therefore, errors are accumulated in each stage of the continuous calculations, causing the accuracy to deteriorate. (The same applies to other continuous calculations made by the computer such as  $y^x$  and  $\sqrt[x]{y}$ .

### **Manual Calculation**

#### What is Manual Calculation

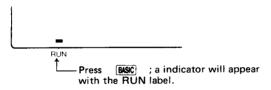
The PC-1401/1402 Computer may be basically used in two ways. One way lets you store whole calculation procedure or steps into the computer's memory as a program in advance, then lets the computer automatically execute it later. The other way lets you calculate step by step through manual key operations.

The latter is called "manual calculation".

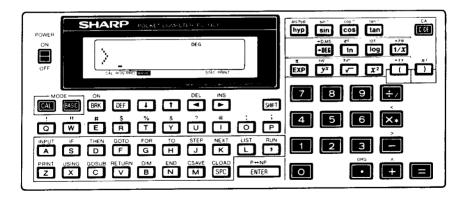
Of course, in the CAL mode, all calculations are performed manually. But here we only call manual calculation performed in the BASIC mode (RUN or PROgram mode) manual calculation.

## **How to Manually Calculate**

Let's try manual calculation in the RUN mode. Press the BASIC key to place your computer in the RUN mode.



In the RUN mode, the keys and functions shown in the following figure are operative (the same is true of the PROgram mode)



Before going into operation examples, let's touch on some important points in operation.

While we usually use operators +, -, x, or  $\div$  for our mathematical calculations on paper, we don't use the operators x and  $\div$  for our arithmetic operations in BASIC. Instead of x and x we use an asterisk (x) and slash (/), respectively.

The operators \* and / can be entered by pressing \*\* and \*\* keys, respectively. To get the result of manual calculation, operate the \*\*ENTER\* key instead of \*\* key.

Do not use dollar signs or commas when entering calculations into the **PC-1401/1402**. These characters have special meaning in the BASIC programming language. Now try these simple arithmetic examples. Remember to clear with the **C-CE** between calculations.

Input	Display
5 Ø + 5 Ø ENTER	100.
1 Ø Ø - 5 Ø ENTER	50.
6 Ø * 1 Ø ENTER	600.
3 Ø Ø / 5 ENTER	60.
1 Ø SHIFT ^ 2 ENTER	100.
2 * SHIFT 7C ENTER	6.283185307
6 4 ENTER	8.

# **Recalling Entries**

Even after the **PC-1401/1402** has displayed the results of your calculation, you can redisplay your last entry. To recall, use the left and right arrows.

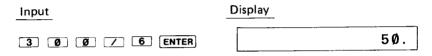
The left arrow, <a> , recalls the expression with the cursor positioned after the last character.</a>

The right arrow, 
, recalls the expression with the cursor positioned "on top of" the first character.

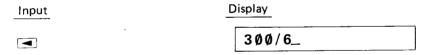
Remember that the left and right arrows are also used to position the cursor along a line. The right and left arrows are very helpful in editing (or modifying) entries without having to retype the entire expression.

You will become familiar with the use of the right and left arrows in the following examples. Now, take the role of the manager and perform the calculations as we discuss them.

As the head of personnel in a large marketing division, you are responsible for planning the annual sales meeting. You expect 300 people to attend the three day conference. For part of this time, the sales force will meet in small groups. You believe that groups of six would be a good size. How many groups would this be?



On second thought you decide that groups containing as odd number of participants might be more effective. Recall your last entry using the



To calculate the new number of groups you must replace the six with an odd number. Five seems to make more sense than seven. Because you recalled using the arrow, the cursor is positioned at the end of the display. Use the to move the cursor one space to the left.

Input	Display
	300/6

Notice that after you move the cursor it becomes a flashing block. Whenever you position the cursor "on top of" an existing character, it will be displayed as the flashing cursor.

Type in a 5 to replace the 6. One caution in replacing characters — once you type a new character over an existing character, the original is gone forever! You cannot recall an expression that has been typed over.

Input	
5	300/5_
ENTER	60.

Sixty seems like a reasonable number of groups, so you decide that each small group will consist of five participants.

Recall is also useful to verify your last entry, especially when you results do not seem to make sense. For instance, suppose you had performed this calculation:

Input	Display
3 Ø / 5 ENTER	6.

Even a tired, overworked manager like you realizes that 6 does not seem to be a reasonable result when you are dealing with hundreds of people! Recall you entry using the 
.

Input	Display
	30/5

Because you recalled using the the flashing cursor is now positioned over the first character in the display. To correct this entry you wish to insert an added zero. Using the , move the cursor until it is positioned over the zero. When making an INSert, you position the flashing cursor over the character before which you wish to make the insertion.

Input	Display	
	30/5	

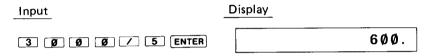
Use the INSert key to make space for the needed character.

Input	Display
SHIFT	3二0/5

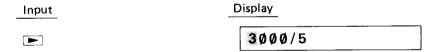
Pressing INSert moves all the characters one space to the right, and inserts a bracketed open slot. The flashing cursor is now positioned over this open space, indicating the location of the next typed input. Type in your zero. Once the entry is corrected, display your new result.

Input	Display	
Ø	300/5	
ENTER	60.	

On the other hand, suppose that you had entered this calculation:



The results seem much too large. If you only have 300 people attending the meeting, how could you have 600 "small groups"? Recall your entry using the



The flashing cursor is now positioned over the first character in the display. To correct this entry eliminate one of the zeros. Using the move the cursor to the first zero (or any zero). When deleting a character, you position the cursor "on top of" the character to be deleted.

Input	Display
▶	3000/5

Now use the DELete key to get rid of one of the zeros.

Input	Display
SHIFT DEL	300/5

Pressing DELete causes all the characters to shift one space to the left. It deletes the character it is "on top of" and the space the character occupies. The flashing cursor stays in the same position indicating the next location for input. Since you have no other changes to make, complete the calculation.



(Note: Pressing the SPaCe key, when it is positioned over a character, replaces the character leaving a blank space. DELete eliminates the character and the space it occupied.)

## Errors

Recalling you last entry is essential when you get the dreaded ERROR message. Let us imagine that, unintentionally, you typed this entry into the **PC-1401/1402**:

Input	Display
3 Ø Ø / / 5 ENTER	ERROR 1

Naturally you are surprised when this message appears! ERROR 1 is simply the computer's way of saying, "I don't know what you want me to do here". To find out what the problem is, recall your entry using either the 
or 
arrow.

Input	Display
	300/75

When you use the or key, the flashing cursor indicates the point at which the computer got confused. And no wonder, you have too many operators! To correct this error use the DELete key.

Input	Display	
SHIFT DEL ENTER		6Ø.

If, upon recalling your entry after an ERROR 1, you find that you have **omitted** a character, use the INSert sequence to correct it.

When using the **PC-1401/1402** as a calculator, the majority of the errors you encounter will be ERROR 1 (an error in syntax). For a complete listing of error messages, see APPENDIX A.

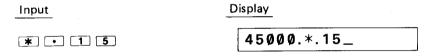
### **Serial Calculations**

The PC-1401/1402 allows you to use the results of one calculation as part of the following calculation.

Part of your responsibility in planning this conference is to draw up a detailed budget for approval. You know that your total budget is \$150.00 for each attendant. Figure your total budget:



Of this amount you plan to use 15% for the final night's awards presentation. When performing serial calculations it is not necessary to retype your previous results, but DO NOT Clear between entries (Do not use the C-CE in this time.). What is the swards budget?



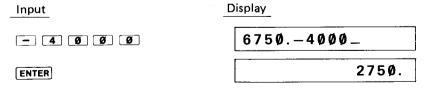
Notice that as you type in the second calculation (\*. 15), the computer automatically displays the result of your first calculation at the left of the screen and includes it in the new calculation. In serial calculations the entry must begin with an operator. As always, you end the entry with  $\boxed{\texttt{ENTER}}$ :

NOTE: The <sup>%</sup> and <sup>4\* o</sup> keys can not be used in the calculation. The <sup>%</sup> key should be used as a character only and the <sup>4\* o</sup> keys is inoperative.

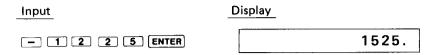
Example: 450000 ★ 15 SHIFT % → ERROR 1



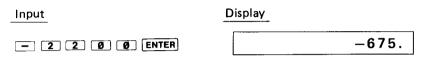
Continue allocating your budget. The hotel will cater you dinner for \$4000:



Decorations will be \$1225:



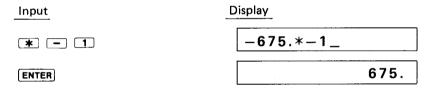
Finally, you must allocate \$2200 for the speaker and entertainment:



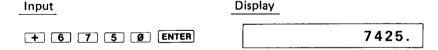
Obviously, you will have to change either your plans or your allocation of resources!

# **Negative Numbers**

Since you want the awards dinner to be really special, you decide to stay with the planned agenda and spend the additional money. However, you wonder what percentage of the total budget will be used up by this item. First, change the sign of the remaining sum:



Now you add this result to your original presentation budget:



Diving by 45000 gives you the percentage of the total budget this new figure represents:



Fine, you decide to allocate 16.5% to the awards presentation.

## **Compound Calculations and Parentheses**

In performing the above calculations, you could have combined several of these operations into one step. For instance, you might have typed both these operations on one line:

675+6750/45000

Compound calculations, however, must be entered very carefully:

675+6750/45000 might be interpreted as

$$\frac{675+6750}{45000} \qquad \text{or} \qquad 675 + \frac{6750}{45000}$$

When performing compound calculations, the **PC-1401/1402** has specific rules of expression evaluation and operator priority (see Page 69). Be sure you get the calculation you want by using parentheses to clarify your expressions:

To illustrate the difference that the placement of parentheses can make, try these two examples:

Input	Display
( 6 7 5 + 6 7 5 Ø ) / 4 5 Ø Ø Ø ENTER	0.165
6 7 5 + ( 6 7 5 Ø / 4 5 Ø Ø Ø ) ENTER	675. 15

## **Using Variables in Calculations**

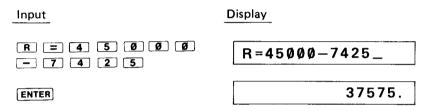
The **PC-1401/1402** can store up to 26 fixed variables under the alphabetic characters A to Z. If you are unfamiliar with the concept of variables, they are more fully explained in Chapter 4. You designate variables with an Assignment Statement:

$$B = -2$$

You can also assign the value of one variable (right) to another variable (left):

A variable may be used in place of a number in any calculation.

Now that you have planned your awards dinner, you need to complete arrangements for your conference. You wish to allocate the rest of your budget by percentages also. First you must find out how much money is still available. Assign a variable (R) to be the amount left from the total:

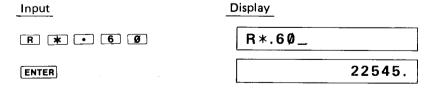


As you press **ENTER** the **PC-1401/1402** performs the calculation and displays the new value of R. You can display the current value of any variable by entering the alphabetic character it is stored under:

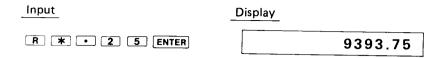
Input	Display	
RENTER		37575.

You can then perform calculations using your variable. The value of (R) will not change until you assign it a new value.

You wish to allocate 60% of the remaining money to room rental:



Similarly, you want to allocate 25% of your remaining budget to conduct management training seminars:



Variables will retain their assigned values even if the machine is turned OFF or undergoes an AUTO OFF. Variables are lost only when:

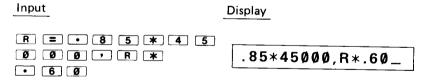
- \* You assign a new value to the same variable.
- \* You type in CLEAR ENTER (not the clear key ( C-CE )).
- \* You clear the machine using the ALL RESET button.
- \* The batteries are changed.

These are certain limitations on the assignment of variables, and certain programming procedures which cause them to be changed. See Chapter 4 for a discussion of assignment. See Chapter 5 for a discussion of the use of variables in programming.

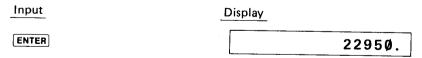
## **Chained Calculations**

In addition to combining several operators in one calculation, the PC-1401/1402 also allows you to perform several calculations one after the other — without having to press ENTER before moving on. You must separate the equations with commas. Only the result of the final calculation is displayed. (Remember too, that the maximum line length accepted by the computer is 80 characters including ENTER).)

You wonder how much money would have been available for rooms if you had kept to your original allocation of 15% for the awards dinner:



Although the computer performs all the calculations in the chain, it displays only the final result:



To find the value of R used in this calculation, enter R:

Input Display

R ENTER 38250.

# Error Message

If an error occurred as a result of manual calculation, an error message will appear in the display such as:

ERROR 1 or ERROR 2

The error state can be cleared with either the CCE or or key. If the or key is used to clear the error state, the portion of the formula where the error occured is recalled in the display (see the description for the recall feature).

## Scientific Notation

People who need to deal with very large and very small numbers often use a special format called exponential or scientific notation. In scientific notation a number is broken down into two parts.

The first part consists of a regular decimal number between 1 and 10. The second part represents how large or small the number is in powers of 10.

As you know, the first number to the left of the decimal point in a regular decimal number shows the number of 1's, the second shows the number of 10's, the third the number of 100's, and the fourth the number of 1000's. These are simply increasing powers of 10:

$$10^{0} = 1$$
,  $10^{1} = 10$ ,  $10^{2} = 100$ ,  $10^{3} = 1000$ , etc.

Scientific notation breaks down a decimal number into two parts: one shows what the numbers are, the second other shows how far a number is to the left, or right, of the decimal point. For example:

1234 becomes 1.234 times  $10^3$  (3 places to the right) 654321 becomes 6.54321 times  $10^5$  (5 places to the right) .000125 becomes 1.25 times  $10^{-4}$  (4 places to the left)

Scientific notation is useful for many shortcuts. You can see that it would take a lot of writing to show 1.0 times  $10^{87}$  — a 1 and 87 zeros! But, in scientific notation this number looks like this:

 $1.0 \times 10^{87}$  or  $1.0 \times 87$ 

The PC-1401/1402 uses scientific notation whenever numbers become too large to display using decimal notation. This computer uses the capital letter E to mean "times ten to the":

1234567890000 is displayed as 1.23456789 E 12 .000000000001 is displayed as 1. E -12

Those of you who are unfamiliar with this type of notation should take some time to put in a few very large and very small numbers to note how they are displayed.

# Limits

The largest number which the **PC-1401/1402** can handle is ten significant digits, with two digit exponents. In other words the largest number is:

and the smallest number is:

Under certain circumstances, when numbers will be used frequently, the **PC-1401/1402** uses a special compact form. In these cases there are special limits imposed on the size of numbers, usually either  $\emptyset$  to 65535 or -32768 to +32767. Those with some can be represented in 16 binary bits. The circumstances in which this form is used are noted in the Chapter 8.

## Last Answer Feature

In the case of the serial calculation, you could use the result of the calculation only as the first member of the subsequent calculation formula.

Refer to the following example.

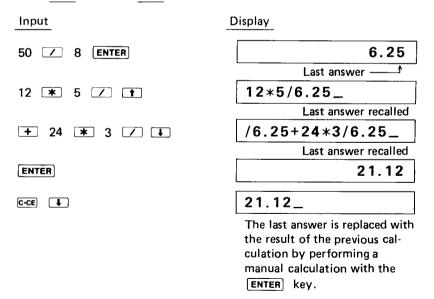
Input	Display
3 + 4 ENTER	7.
* 5	7.*5_
ENTER	35.

Press [CCE], then the [1] or [1] key. If you operated these keys just after completing the calculation example above, you should see "35." in your display. The numeric data displayed is the result of the your last calculation.

The PC-1401/1402 can "remember" the last answer (result) obtained through manual calculation, and recall it on its display with the or key.

In the case of the serial calculation described above, you could use the result of the previous calculation only as the first member of the subsequent calculation formula. With the last answer feature, however, you can place the result of the previous calculation in any position of the subsequent calculation.

(Example) Use the result (6.25) of the operation,  $50 \div 8$ , to compute 12 x 5 ÷  $6.25 + 24 \times 3 \div 6.25 =$ :



As shown in this example, the last answer can be recalled anytime and anyplace, but will be replaced with a new last answer resulting from the last calculation.

The last answer is not cleared by the G-CE or key operation.

 The last answer cannot be recalled; when the computer is not in the RUN mode, program execution is temporarily halted, or the Trace mode is selected.

# Length of Formula

The length of a formula you can put into your computer has a certain limitation. With the PC-1401/1402, up to 79 key strokes can be used to enter a single calculation formula (excluding the **ENTER** key). If you attempt the 80th key stroke, the cursor ( ) will start blinking on that character, indicating that the 80th key entry is not valid.

## Scientific calculations in the BASIC mode

This computer has many scientific functions which can be used in BASIC mode.

To perform scientific functions you must press **ENTER** at the end of the input or your calculations will not be acted upon by the computer.

These functions will be described as follows:

Functions	Definition in PC-1401/ 1402	Operation	Remark
Trigonometic functions			
sin	SIN	sin	
cos	cos	COS	
tan	TAN	tan	
Inverse trigonometric functions			
sin <sup>-1</sup>	ASN	SHIFT sin-1	
cos <sup>-1</sup>	ACS	SHIFT COST	
tan <sup>-1</sup>	ATN	SHIFT tan-1	
Hyperbolic functions			
sinh	HSN	hyp sin	
cosh	HCS	hyp cos	
tanh	HTN	hyp tan	

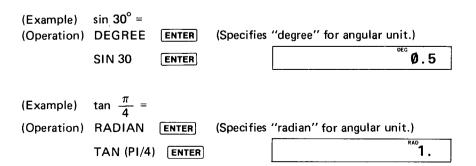
Function	ons	Definition in PC-1401/ 1402	Operation	Remark
Inverse hype	rbolic			
functions	sinh <sup>-1</sup>	AHS	SHIFT archyp sin-1	
	cosh <sup>-1</sup>	AHC	SHIFT archyp COS	
	tanh <sup>-1</sup>	AHT	SHIFT Prohyp tan-1	
Logarithmic				
functions	ln	LN	<u>In</u>	log <sub>e</sub> x
-	log	LOG	log	log <sub>10</sub> <i>x</i>
Exponential	_			
LXponential	ex	EXP	SHIFT EX	e≒
	Ü			2.718281828
	10 <sup>x</sup>	TEN	SHIFT 10x	
Reciprocal	$\frac{1}{x}$	RCP	1/1	
Square	x <sup>2</sup>	sau	<u>x</u> 2	
Square root	$\sqrt{}$	√or SQR	•	
Cubic root	<b>3</b> √	CUR	SHIFT 34	
Factorial	n!	FACT	SHIFT n!	
Pi ·		π or PI	SHIFT TL	π ≒ 3.141592654
DMS → DE	G	DEG	+DEG	
DEG → DN	1S	DMS	SHIFT -DMS	
Power	$y^x$	^	SHIFT	$y \wedge x : y^x$
Power root	$\sqrt[x]{y}$	ROT	SHIFT X47	$y ROTx : \sqrt[X]{y}$
Rectangular → Polar cod	coordinates ordinates	POL	SHIFT ◆T0	

Functions	Definition in PC-1401/ 1402	Operation	Remark
Polar coordinates  → Rectangular coordinates	REC	SHIFT +XY	
Integer	INT	INT	INT(x)
Absolute   x	ABS	A B S	ABS(x)
Sign	SGN	SGN	SGN(x) x > 0:1 x = 0:0 x < 0:-1

Of these functions, the INT, ABS, and SGN can be entered by using alphabetic keys. Some other functions may also be entered with alphabetic keys. For examples, "sin 30" may be entered either by operating sin 30 or S I N 30. For trigonometric and inverse trigonometric functions and coordinate conversion, the desired angular unit must be specified in advance. In manual calculation, angular units may be specified either by operating SHIFT DRG or with the following instructions:

Angular unit	Command	Display Symbol	Description
Degree	DEGREE	DEG	Represents a right angle as 90 [ $^{\circ}$ ] .
Radian	RADIAN	RAD	Represents a right angle as $\pi/2$ [rad].
Grad	GRAD	GRAD	Represents a right angle as 100 [g].

These instructions are used to specify angular units in program. For practice, use these instructions to specify angular units in the following calculation examples:



(Example)  $\cos^{-1}$  (-0.5) =

(Operation) DEGREE ENTER (Specifies "degree" for angular unit.)

ACS - 0.5 ENTER 120.

(Example)  $\log 5 + \ln 5 =$ 

(Operation) LOG 5 + LN 5 ENTER 2.308407917

(Example)  $e^{2+3} =$ 

(Operation) EXP (2 + 3) ENTER 148.4131591 (Do not use the EXP)

(Example)  $\sqrt[3]{4^3 + 5^3} =$ 

(Operation) CUR  $(4^3 + 5^3)$  ENTER 5.738793548

(Example) Convert 30 deg. 30 min. in sexagenary notation into decimal notation.

(Operation) DEG 30. 30 **ENTER** 3 **0.5** 

(30.5 degree)

(Example) Convert 30.755 deg. in decimal notation into sexagenary notation

(Operation) DMS 30.755 ENTER 3 Ø . 4 5 1 8 (30 deg. 45 min. 18 sec.)

(Example) Conversion from orthogonal into polar coordinates: Determine the polar coordinate  $(r, \theta)$  for point P (3, 8) on an orthogonal coordinate:

(Operation) DEGREE ENTER (Specifies "degree" for angular unit.)

POL (3, 8) ENTER (r) 8.544003745 (r = 8.5)

Z ENTER ( $\theta$ ) 69.44395478

- \* The value of  $\theta$  is transferred to variable Z, and the value of r to variable Y.
- (Example) Conversion from polar into rectangular coordinates: Determine rectangular coordinate (x, y) for point P (12,  $\frac{4}{5}\pi$ ) on a polar coordinate.

(Operation) RADIAN ENTER (Specifies "radian" for angular unit.)

REC (12, (4/5 \* PI))

ENTER (x) -9.708203933(x = -9.7)

Z ENTER (Y) 7.053423028(y = 7.1)

\* The values of y and x are transferred to variables Z and Y, respectively.

Note: For coordinate conversion, the conversion result is transferred to variables Z and Y. Therefore, the previous contents of Z and Y will be cleared.

### - Reference -

Equations comprised of logical operators (=, >, <, >=, <=, <>) can take on the values listed in the following table: x

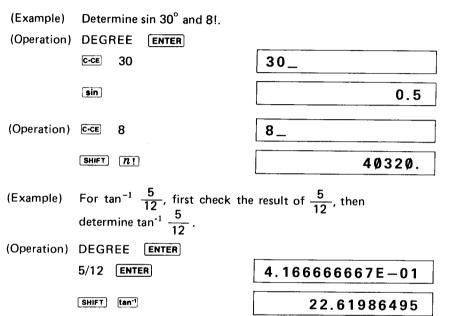
 $\boldsymbol{x}$  and  $\boldsymbol{y}$  represent numeric values.

=*	$ \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & \text{if } x = y \\ 0 & \text{if } x \neq y \end{array} $	>=	$ \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & \text{if } x \ge y \\ 0 & \text{if } x < y \end{array} $
>	$ \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & \text{if } x > y \\ 0 & \text{if } x \leq y \end{array} $	<=	$ \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & \text{if } x \leq y \\ 0 & \text{if } x > y \end{array} $
<	$ \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & \text{if } x < y \\ 0 & \text{if } x \ge y \end{array} $	<>	1 if $x \neq y$ ("<>" 0 if $x = y$ (means "\neq".)

If, for example, "A = numeric value" or "B = formula" is used in a logical equation, the computer will not treat it as a logical equation but as an assignment statement for variables. When using an equal (=) sign for a logical equation, use it in the form of "numeric value = A" or "formula = B", with the exception of conditional expressions used in IF statements.

# **Direct Calculation Feature**

In the manual calculation described up to now, we always used the **ENTER** key to terminate a formula and obtain the calculation result of the formula. However, you can directly operate the functions of the **PC-1401/1402** computer with the desired function key (without operating the **ENTER** key) when the objective numeric data is in the display.



It should be noted, however, that this "direct" calculation mode is not available for functions requiring entry of more than one numeric value (binominal functions) such as power, power root, or coordinate conversion.

The direct calculation feature is not effective for formulas:

(e.g.) 
$$\boxed{\texttt{C-CE}}$$
  $5*4 \rightarrow 5*4$   $\boxed{\texttt{log}}$   $\rightarrow 5*4LOG$   $\boxed{}$ 

The direct calculation feature is effective only for numeric values. Therefore, if hex numbers A to F are entered for hex to decimal conversion, the direct calculation feature will remain inoperative. In such a case, use the ordinary manual calculation using the **ENTER** key.

After a direct calculation is done, the recall feature is not operative. Operation
of the or key will only display the cursor.

# **Priority in Manual Calculation**

In the BASIC mode, you can type in formulas in the exact order in which they are written, including parentheses or functions. The order of priority in calculation and treatment of intermediate results will be taken care of by the computer itself.

The internal order of priority in manual calculation is as follows:

- 1) Recalling variables or  $\pi$ .
- 2) Function (sin, cos, etc.)
- 3) Power ( \( \) ) or power root (ROT)
- 4) Sign (+, -)
- 5) Multiplication or division (\* , /)
- 6) Addition or subtraction (+, -)
- 7) Comparison of magnitude (>, >=, <, <=, <>)
- 8) Logical AND, OR

- Notes: \* If parentheses are used in a formula, the operation given within the parentheses has the highest priority.
  - \* Composite functions are operated from right to left (sin cos<sup>-1</sup> 0.6).
  - \* Chained power  $(3^{4^2} \text{ or } 3^{4^2})$  or power root are operated from right
  - \* For the above items 3) and 4), the last entry has a higher priority.

(e.g.) 
$$-2^4 \rightarrow -(2^4)$$
  
 $3^2 \rightarrow 3^{-2}$ 

# CHAPTER 4 CONCEPTS AND TERMS OF BASIC

In this Chapter we will examine some concepts and terms of the BASIC language.

# **String Constants**

In addition to numbers, there many ways that the SHARP PC-1401/1402 uses letters and special symbols. These letters, numbers, and special symbols are called characters. These characters are available on the PC-1401/1402:

```
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 Ø
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
! " #$ % & ( ) * + , - . / : ; <= > ? @√π ^
```

In BASIC, a collection of characters is called a **string**. In order for the **PC-1401** to tell the difference between a string and other parts of a program, such as verbs or variable names, you must enclose the characters of the string in quotation marks (").

The following are examples of string constants:

"HELLO" "GOODBYE"

"SHARP PC-1401"

The following are not valid string constants:

"COMPUTER No ending quote

"ISN"T" Quote can't be used within a string

# Hexadecimal Numbers

The decimal system is only one of many different systems to represent numbers. Another which has become quite important when using computers is the hexadecimal system. The hexadecimal system is based on 16 instead of 10. To write hexadecimal numbers you use the familiar  $0 \sim 9$  and 6 more "digits": A, B, C, D, E, and F. These correspond to 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15. When you want the **PC-1401/1402** to treat a number as hexadecimal put an ampersand '&' character in front of the numeral:

&A = 10 &10 = 16 &100 = 256 &FFFF = 65535

Those with some computer background may notice that the last number (65535) is the same as the largest number in the special group of limits discussed in the paragraph "Limits" on page 60. Hexadecimal notation is never required in using the PC-1401/1402, but there are special applications where it is convenient.

# Variables

The smallest number is +1.E-99. This gives you quite a range to choose from. However, if the result of a calculation exceeds this range, the computer will let you know by turning on the error annunciator and by displaying the error message in the screen. This annunciator is a small E in the upper right-hand corner of the screen. For the error message refer to the Appendix A. To see it right now type in:

To get the computer working properly again, just press the cell key. But how do you go about storing all this information? It's really very easy. The computer likes to use names for different pieces of data. Let's store the number 556 into the computer. You may call this number by any name that you wish, but for this exercise, let's use the letter R. The statement, LET, can be used to instruct the computer to assign a value to a variable name but only in a program statement. However, the LET command is not necessary, so we will not use it very often. Now, type in R = 556 and press the ENTER. The computer now has the value 556 associated with the letter R. These letters that are used to store information are called variables. To see the content of the variable R, press the CEE key, the R key and the ENTER key. The computer responds by showing you the value 556 on the right of your screen. This ability can become very useful when you are writing programs and formulas.

Next, let's use the R variable in a simple formula. In this formula, the variable R stands for the radius of a circle whose area we want to find. The formula for the area of a circle is:  $A = \pi * R^2$ . Type in R SHIFT  $\bigcirc$  2 \* SHIFT  $\boxed{\pi}$  ENTER The result is 971179.3866. This technique of using variables in equations will become more understandable as we get into writing programs.

So far, we've only discussed numeric variables. What about storing alphabetic characters? Well, the idea is the same, but, so the computer will know the difference between the two kinds of variables, add a \$ to the variable name. For instance, let's store the word BYTE in the variable B\$. Notice the \$ after the B?

#### Concepts and Terms of BASIC

This tells the computer that the contents of the letter B is alphabetic, or string data.

To illustrate this, key in B SHIFT R = SHIFT W BYTE SHIFT W ENTER.

The value BYTE is now stored in the variable B\$. To make sure of this, type in B SHIFT R ENTER. The screen shows BYTE. This time the display is on the left side of the screen, instead of the right.

Variables handled by the SHARP PC-1401/1402 are divided into the followings;

Variables {	Numeric variables	Fixed numeric variables (A to Z) Simple numeric variables (AB, C1, etc. Numeric array variables				
	String variables	Fixed character variables (A\$ to Z\$) Simple character variables (BB\$, C2\$, etc.) Character array variables				

## **Fixed Variables**

The first section, fixed variable, is always used by the computer for storing data. It can be thought of as pre-allocated variable space. In other words, no matter how much memory your program uses up, you will always have at least 26 variables to choose from to store data in. This data can be one of two types: NUMERIC or STRING (alphabetic character). Fixed memory location are eight bytes long and can be used for only one type of data at a time. To illustrate this, type in the following example:

You get the message:

### **ERROR 9**

This means that you have put numeric data into the area of memory called A and then told the computer to show you that information again as STRING data. This confuses the computer so it says that there is an error condition. Press the cet key to clear error condition. Now try the following example:

Again, the computer is confused and gives the ERROR 9 message. Look at Figure shown below to see that the variable name A equals the same area in memory as the variable name A\$, and that B equals B\$, and so on for all the letter of the alphabet.

## Figure:

```
A = A = A = A(1) = A = A(1)
B = B \$ = A(2) = A\$(2)
C = C \$ = A(3) = A\$(3)
D = D\$ = A(4) = A\$(4)
E = E \$ = A(5) = A\$(5)
F = F \$ = A(6) = A\$(6)
G = G\$ = A(7) = A\$(7)
H = H$ = A(8) = A$(8)
I = I \$ = A(9) = A\$(9)
J = J \$ = A(10) = A\$(10)
K = K\$ = A(11) = A\$(11)
L = L \$ = A(12) = A\$(12)
M = M\$ = A(13) = A\$(13)
N = NS = A(14) = AS(14)
O = O$ = A(15) = A$(15)
P = P \$ = A(16) = A\$(16)
Q = Q\$ = A(17) = A\$(17)
R = R\$ = A(18) = A\$(18)
S = S S = A(19) = AS(19)
T = T \$ = A(20) = A\$(20)
U = US = A(21) = AS(21)
V = V\$ = A(22) = A\$(22)
W = W\$ = A(23) = A\$(23)
X = X\$ = A(24) = A\$(24)
Y = YS = A(25) = AS(25)
Z = Z\$ = A(26) = A\$(26)
```

# Simple Variables

Simple variable names are specified by two (or more) alpha-numeric characters, such as AA or B1. Unlike fixed variables, simple variables have no dedicated storage area in the memory. The area for simple variables is automatically set aside (within the program and data area) when a simple variable is first used.

Since separate memory areas are defined for simple numeric variables and simple character variables even if they have the same name, variables such as AB and AB\$, for example, may be used at the same time.

While alphanumeric characters are usable for simple variable names, the first character of a variable name must always be an alphabetic character. If more than two characters are used to define a variable name, only the first two characters are meaningful.

### Concepts and Terms of BASIC

Note:

- The function or BASIC instruction names to the PC-1401/1402 computer are not usable for variable names.
  - (e.g.) PI, IF, TO, ON, SIN, etc.
- Each simple character variable can hold up to 16 characters or symbols.

## Array Variables

For some purposes it is useful to deal with numbers as an organized group, such as a list of scores or a tax table. In BASIC these groups are called arrays. An array can be either one-dimensional, like a list, or two-dimensional, like a table.

To define an array, the DIM (short for dimension) statement is used. Arrays must always be "declared" (defined) before they are used. (Not like the single-value variables we have been using.) The form for the numeric DIMension statement is:

DIM numeric-variable-name (size)

where:

<u>numeric-variable-name</u> is a variable name which conforms to the normal rules for numeric variable names previously discussed.

size is the number of storage locations and must be number in the range 0 through 255. Note that when you specify a number for the size you get one more location than you specified.

Examples of legal numeric DIMension statements are:

DIM X (5) DIM AA (24) DIM Q5 (0)

The first statement creates an array X with 6 storage locations. The second statement creates an array AA with 25 locations. The third statement creates an array with one location and is actually rather silly since (for numbers at least), it is the same as declaring a single-value numeric variable.

It is important to know that an array-variable X and a variable X are separate and distinct to SHARP. The first X denotes a series of numeric storage locations, and the second a single and different location.

Now that you know how to create arrays, you might be wondering how it is that we refer to each storage location. Since the entire group has only one name, the way in which we refer to a single location (called an "element") is to follow the group name with a number is parentheses. This number is called a "subscript". Thus, for example, to store the number 8 into the fifth element of our array X (declared previously) we would write:

$$X(4) = 8$$

If the use of 4 is puzzling, remember that the numbering of elements begins at zero and continues through the size number declared in the DIM statement.

The real power of arrays lies in the ability to use an expression or a variable name as a subscript.

To declare a character array a slightly different form of the DIM statement is used:

DIM character-variable-name (size) \* length

#### where:

character-variable-name is a variable name which conforms to the rules for normal character variables as discussed previously.

size is the number of storage locations and must be in the range 0 through 255. Note that when you specify a number, you get one more location than you specified.

\*length is optional. If used, it specifieds the length of each of the strings that comprise the array. Length is a number in the range 1 to 80. If this clause is not used, the strings will have the default length of 16 characters.

Example of legal character array declarations are:

DIM X\$ (4)
DIM NM\$ (10) \* 10
DIM IN\$ (1) \* 80
DIM R\$ (0) \* 26

The first example creates an array of five strings each able to store 16 characters. The second DIM statement declares an array NM with eleven strings of 10 characters each. Explicit definition of strings smaller than the default helps to conserve memory space. The third example declares a two element array of 80-character strings and the last example declares a single string of twenty-six characters.

#### Concepts and Terms of BASIC

Besides the simple arrays we have just studied, the **PC-1401/1402** allows "two-dimensional" arrays. By analogy, a one-dimensional array is a list of data arranged in a single column. A two-dimensional array is a table of data with rows and columns. The two-dimensional array is declared by the statement:

DIM numeric-variable-name (row, columns)

or

DIM character-variable-name (rows, columns) \* length

#### where:

<u>rows</u> specifies the number of rows in the array. This must be a number in the range 0 through 255. Note that when you specify the number of rows you get one more row than the specification.

columns specifies the number of columns in the array. This must be a number in the range 0 through 255. Note that when you specify the number of columns you get one more column than the specification.

The following diagram illustrates the storage locations that result from the declaration DIM T (2,3) and the subscripts (now composed of two numbers) which pertain to each storage location:

	column 1	column 2	column 3	column 4
row 0	T (0, 0)	T (0, 1)	T (0, 2)	T (0, 3)
row 1	T (1, 0)	T (1, 1)	T (1, 2)	T (1, 3)
row 2	T (2, 0)	T (2, 1)	T (2, 2)	T (2, 3)

Note: Two-dimensional arrays can rapidly eat up storage space. For example, an array with 25 rows and 35 columns uses 875 storage locations!

Arrays are very powerful programming tools.

The following table shows the number of bytes used to define each variable and the number used by each program statement.

Variable	Variable name	Data		
Numeric variable	7 bytes	8 bytes		
		Array variable	Specified number	
String variable	7 bytes	Simple variable (two-character variable)	16 bytes	

\* For example, if DIM Z\$ (2, 3) \* 10 is specified, 12 variables, each capable of storing 10 characters, are reserved. This requires 7 bytes (variable name) + 10 bytes (number of characters) x 12 = 127 bytes.

Element	Line number Statement & function		Others, ENTER	
Number of bytes used	3 bytes	1 byte	1 byte	

# Variables in the Form of A ( )

While a data area on the computer's memory is set aside for fixed variables, it may also be used to define subscripted variables which have the same form as array variables.

There are 26 fixed variable names available: i.e. A through Z (A\$ through Z\$). Each of these names can be subscripted with the numbers 1 through 26, such as A(1) - A(26) or A\$(1) - A\$(26). This means that variable A(1) may be used in place of variable A, A(2) in place of B, A(3) in place of C, and so forth.

However, if an array named A or A\$ has already been defined by the DIM statement, subscripted variables named A cannot be defined. For example, if an array A is defined by DIM A(5) the location for A(0) through A(5) are set aside in the program/data area. So if you specify variable A(2), it does not refer to the fixed variable B, but refers to the array variable A(2) defined in the program/data area. If you specify A(9), it will cause an error since A(9) is outside the range of the dimension specified by the DIM A(5) statement.

In turn, if subscripted variables are already defined in the form of A( ), it is not possible to define arrays A or A\$ by using the DIM statement, unless the definition for the subscripted variables is cleared with the CLEAR statement.

Using subscripts in excess of 26:
If subscripts greater than 26 are used for subscripted variables A( ) when array A is not defined by a DIM statement, the corresponding locations in the program/data area are set aside for these A() variables. For instance, if you execute A(35) = 5, locations for variables A(27) to A(35) will be reserved in the program/data area.

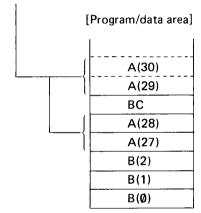
77

### Concepts and Terms of BASIC

While variables subscripted in excess of 26 are treated as array variables, they are subject to the following special restrictions:

- (1) Locations for an array with the same name must contiguous in the program/ data area. Otherwise, an error will occur.
  - 10 DIM B(2)
  - 20 A(28) = 5
  - 30 BC = 12
  - 40 A(30) = 9

If this program is excuted, the array named "A" is not defined in two consecutive segments in the program data area, and an error will result at line 40.



- (2) Numeric array variables and character array variables with the same subscript cannot be defined at the same time. For example, A(30) and A\$(30) cannot be defined at the same time. Since they use the same location in the program/ data area.
- (3) Two dimensional arrays cannot be defined, nor is it possible to specify the length of character strings to be held in character array variables. For example, the length of a character string which can be held in the character array variable A\$( ) is limited to seven characters or less.
- (4) Variable subscripted with zero (0) cannot be defined. If A(0) or A\$(0) is defined, an error will result.

## **Expressions**

An expression is some combination of variables, constants, and operators which can be evaluated to a single value. The calculations which you entered in Chapter 3 were examples of expressions. Expressions are an intrinsic part of BASIC programs. For example, an expression might be a formula that computes an answer to some equation, a test to determine the relationship between two quantities, or a means to format a set of strings.

## **Numeric Operators**

The PC-1401/1402 has five numeric operators. These are the arithmetic operators which you used when exploring the use of the PC-1401/1402 as a calculator in Chapter 3:

- + Addition
- Subtraction
- \* Multiplication
- / Division
- Power

A numeric expression is constructed in the same way that you entered compound calculator operations. Numeric expressions can contain any meaningful combination of numeric constants, numeric variables, and these numeric operators:

$$(A * B) ^ 2$$
  
 $A (2,3) + A (3,4) + 5.0 - C$   
 $(A/B) * (C+D)$ 

# **String Expressions**

String expressions are similar to numeric expressions except that there is only one string operator — concatenation (+). This is the same symbol used for plus. When used with a pair of strings, the + attaches the second string to the end of the first string and makes one longer string. You should take care in making more complex string concatenations and other string operations because the work space used by the PC-1401/1402 for string calculations is limited to only 79 characters.

### Concepts and Terms of BASIC

NOTE: String quantities and numeric quantities cannot be combined in the same expression unless one uses one of the functions which convert a string value into a numeric value or vice versa:

# Relational Expressions

A relational expression compares two expressions and determines whether the stated relationship is True or False. The relational operators are:

> Greater Than

>= Greater Than or Equal To

= Equals

<> Not Equal To

<= Less Than or Equal To</p>

< Less Than

The following are valid relational expressions:

$$A < B$$
  
 $C(1, 2) > = 5$   
 $D(3) < > 8$ 

If A was equal to 10, B equal to 12, C(1, 2) equal to 6, and D(3) equal to 9, all of these relational expressions would be True.

Character strings can also be compared in relational expressions. The two strings are compared character by character according to their ASCII value starting at the first character (see Appendix B for ASCII values). If one string is shorter than the other, a Ø or NUL will be used for any missing positions. All of the following relational expressions are True:

```
"ABCDEF" = "ABCDEF"
"ABCDEF" <> "ABCDE"
"ABCDEF" > "ABCDE"
```

Relational expressions evaluate to either True or False. The **PC-1401/1402** represents True by a 1; False is represented by a Ø. In any logical test an expression which evaluates to 1 or more will be regarded as True while one which evaluates to Ø or less will be considered False. Good programming practice, however, dictates the use of an explict relational expression instead of relying on this coincidence.

# **Logical Expressions**

of

В

Logical expressions are relational expressions which use the operators AND, OR, and NOT. AND and OR are used to connect two relational expressions; the value of the combined expression is shown in the following tables:

A AND B			Value of A		
			True	False	
Value		True	True	False	
	of B	False	False	False	
A OR B			Value of	Α	
			True	False	
	Value	True	True	True	

False

(Note: Value of A and B must be Ø or 1)

True

Decimal numbers can be expressed in the binary notation of 16 bits as follows:

False

DECIMAL NOTATION	BINARY NOTATION OF 16-BIT
32767	0111111111111111
: : 3	
3	000000000000011
2	0000000000000010
1	00000000000000001
0	000000000000000000000000000000000000000
-1	11111111111111111
-2	1111111111111111
-3	11111111111111101
:	
_327 <b>6</b> 8	1000000000000000

The negative (NOT) of a binary number 0000000000001 is taken as follows:

#### Concepts and Terms of BASIC

Thus, 1 is inverted to 0, and 0 to 1 for each bit, which is called "to take negative (NOT)."

Then, the following will result when 1 and NOT 1 are added together:

Thus, all bits become 1. According to the above number list, the bits become -1 in decimal notation, that is 1 + NOT 1 = -1.

The relationship between numerical value X and its negative

$$X + NOT \quad X = -1$$

This results in an equation of NOT X = -X-1

i.e. NOT 
$$X = -(X + 1)$$

From the equation the following are found to result.

NOT 
$$0 = -1$$

$$NOT - 1 = 0$$

$$NOT - 2 = 1$$

More than two relational expressions can be combined with these operators. You should take care to use parentheses to make the intended comparison clear.

$$(A < 9)$$
 AND  $(B > 5)$   
 $(A > = 10)$  AND NOT  $(A > 20)$   
 $(C = 5)$  OR  $(C = 6)$  OR  $(C = 7)$ 

The PC-1401/1402 implements logical operators as "bitwise" logical functions on 16 bit quantities. (See note on relational expressions and True and False). In normal operations this is not significant because the simple 1 and Ø (True and False) which result from a relational expression uses only a single bit. If you apply a logical operator to a value other than Ø or 1, it works on each bit independently. For example if A is 17, and B is 22, (A OR B) is 23:

```
17 in binary notation is 10001
22 in binary notation is 10110
17 OR 22 is 10111 (1 if 1 in either number, otherwise 0)
10111 is 23 in decimal.
```

If you are a proficient programmer, there are certain applications where this type of operation can be very useful. Beginning programmers should stick to clear, simple True or False relational expressions.

## Parentheses and Operator Precedence

When evaluating complex expressions the **PC-1401/1402** follows a predefined set of priorities which determine the sequence in which operators are evaluated. This can be quite significant:

$$5+2*3$$
 could be  $5+2=7$  or  $2*3=6$   $6+5=11$ 

The exact rules of "operator precedence" are given in Appendix D.

To avoid having to remember all these rules and to make your program clearer, always use parentheses to determine the sequence of evaluation. The above example is clarified by writing either:

$$(5+2)*3$$
 or  $5+(2*3)$ 

## **RUN Mode**

In general, any of the above expressions can be used in the RUN mode well as in programming a BASIC statement. In the RUN mode an expression is computed and displayed immediately. For example:

Input	Display
(5 > 3) AND (2 < 6)	1.

The 1 means that the expression is True.

# **Functions**

Functions are special components of the BASIC language which take one value and transform it into another value. Functions act like variables whose value is determined by the value of other variables or expressions. ABS is a function which produces the absolute value of its argument:

## Concepts and Terms of BASIC

LOG is a function which computes the log to the base 10 of its argument.

LOG (100) is 2 LOG (1000) is 3

A function can be used any place that a variable can be used. Many functions do not require the use of parentheses:

LOG 100 is the same as LOG (100)

You must use parentheses for functions which have more than one argument. Using parentheses always makes programs clearer.

See Chapter 8 for a complete list of functions available on the PC-1401/1402.

# CHAPTER 5 PROGRAMMING THE PC-1401/1402

In the previous chapter we examined some of the concepts and terms of the BASIC programming language. In this chapter you will use these elements to create programs on the PC-1401/1402. Let us reiterate however, this is **not** a manual on how to program in BASIC. What this chapter will do is familiarize you with the use of BASIC on your PC-1401/1402.

## **Programs**

A program consists of a set of instruction to the computer. Remember the PC-1401/1402 is only a machine. It will perform the exact operations that you specify. You, the programmer, are responsible for issuing the correct instructions.

## **BASIC Statements**

The PC-1401/1402 interprets instructions according to a predetermined format. This format is called a statement. You always enter BASIC statements in the same pattern. Statements must start with a line number:

10: PRINT "HELLO"

20: END 30:

# **Line Numbers**

Each line of a program must have a unique line number — any integer between 1 and 65279. Line numbers are the reference for the computer. They tell the **PC-1401/1402** the order in which to perform the program. You need not enter lines in sequential order (although if you are a beginning programmer, it is probably less confusing for you to do so). The computer always begins execution with the lowest line number and moves sequentially through the lines of a program in ascending order.

When programming it is wise to allow increments in your line numbering (10, 20, 30, . . . 10, 30, 50 etc). This enables you to insert additional lines if necessary. **CAUTION:** Do not use the same line numbers in different programs. If you use the same line number, the oldest line with that number is deleted when you enter the new line.

# BASIC Verbs

All BASIC statements must contain **verbs.** Verbs tell the computer what action to perform. A verb is always contained within a program, and as such is not acted upon immediately.

## **Programming**

10: PRINT "HELLO"

2Ø: END 3Ø:

Some statements require or allow an operand:

10: PRINT "HELLO"

2Ø: END 3Ø: :

Operands provide information to the computer telling it what data the verb will act upon. Some verbs require operands, with other verbs they are optional. Certain verbs do not allow operands. (See Chapter 8 for a complete listing of BASIC verbs and their use on the **PC-1401/1402**).

# **BASIC** Commands

Commands are instructions to the computer which are entered outside of a program. Commands instruct the computer to perform some action with your program or to set modes which effect how your programs are executed.

Unlike verbs, commands have immediate effects — as soon as you complete entering the command (by pressing the **ENTER** key), the command will be executed. Commands **are not** preceded by a line number:

RUN NEW RADIAN

Some verbs may also be used as commands. (See Chapter 8 for a complete listing of BASIC commands and their use on the **PC-1401/1402**).

# **Modes**

The RUN mode is also used to execute the programs you create.

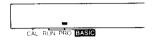
The PROgram mode is used to enter and edit your programs.

# Beginning to Program on the PC-1401/1402

After all your practice in using the PC-1401/1402 as a calculator you are probably quite at home with the keyboard. From now on, when we show an entry, we will not show every keystroke. Remember to use SHIFT to access characters above the keys and END EVERY LINE BY PRESSING THE ENTER KEY.

Now you ready to program.

Set the POWER SWITCH to the ON position and then press the wsc key twice. You will see the following initial information in the display.



The above display shows that the computer is in PROgram mode.

(If a dash indicator is at the CAL or RUN label, press the WSC key once or twice.) Enter the NEW command.

Input	Display
NEW	>

The NEW command clears the PC-1401/1402's memory of all existing programs and data. The prompt appears after you press [ENTER], indicating that the computer is awaiting input.

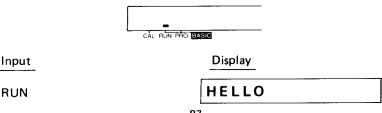
# Example 1 — Entering and Running a Program

Make sure the PC-1401/1402 is in the PRO mode and enter the following program:

Input	Display
10 PRINT "HELLO"	10:PRINT "HELLO"

Notice that when you push [ENTER] the PC-1401/1402 displays your input, automatically inserting a colon (:) between the line number and the verb. Verify that the statement is in the correct format.

Now press the **BASIC** key to set the RUN mode.



#### **Programming**

Since this is the only line of the program, the computer will stop executing at this point. Press **ENTER** to get out of the program and reenter RUN if you wish to execute the program again.

# Example 2 — Editing a Program

Suppose you wanted to change the message that your program was displaying, that is you wanted to edit your program. With a single line program you could just retype the entry, but as you develop more complex programs editing becomes a very important component of your programming. Let's edit the program you have just written.

Are you still in the RUN mode? If so change to the PROgram mode.

You need to recall your program in order to edit it. Use the Up Arrow (↑) to recall your program. If your program was completely executed, the † will recall the last line of the program. If there was an error in the program, or if you used the BREAK ( BRK ) key to stop execution, the † will recall the line in which the error or BREAK occurred. To make changes in your program use the † to move up in your program (recall the previous line) and the ↓ to move down in your program (display the next line). If held down the † and the ↓ will scroll vertically, that is they will display each line moving up or down in your program.

You will remember that to move the cursor within a line you use the ▶ (right arrow) and ◀ (left arrow). Using the ▶ position the cursor over the first character you wish to change:

Input	Display
<b>†</b>	10: PRINT "HELLO"
4444	10 PRINT "HELLO"

Notice that the cursor is now in the flashing block form indicating that it is "on top of" an existing character. Type in:

Input	<u>Display</u>		
GOOD"!	10 "GOOD"!_		

Don't forget to press **ENTER** at the end of the line. Change to the RUN mode with the **BASC**.

Input	Display ————————————————————————————————————				
RUN	ERROR	1	ΙN	10	

This is a new kind of error message. Not only is the error type identified (our old friend the syntax error) but the **line number** in which the error occurs is also indicated.

Press the coe and then return into the PROgram mode. You must be in the PROgram mode to make changes in a program. Using the \(\dagger, recall the last line of your program.

Input	Display
$\uparrow$	10: PRINT "GOOD"!

The flashing cursor is positioned over the problem area. In Chapter 4 you learned that when entering string constants in BASIC all characters must be contained within quotation marks. Use the DELete key to eliminate the "!":

Input	Display		
DEL	10 PRINT "GOOD"_		

Now let's put the ! in the correct location. When editing programs, DELete and INSert are used in exactly the same way as they are in editing calculations (See Chapter 3). Using the position the cursor on top of the character which will be the first character following the insertion.

Input	Display	
•	10 PRINT "GOOD"	

Press the INSert key. A \_\_ will indicate the spot where the new data will be entered:

Input	Display	
INS	10 PRINT "GOODZ"	

Type in the !. The display looks like this:

Input		
!	10 PRINT "GOOD!"	

### Program ming

Remember to press **ENTER** so the correction will be entered into the program.

**NOTE:** If you wish to DELete an entire line from your program just type in the line number and the original line will be eliminated.

# Example 3 — Using Variables in Programming

If you are unfamiliar with the use of numeric and string variables in BASIC, reread these sections in Chapter 4.

Using variables in programming allows much more sophisticated use of the PC-1401/1402's computing abilities.

Remember, you assign numeric fixed variables using any letter from A to Z:

$$A = 5$$

To assign string variables you also use a letter, followed by a dollar sign. Do not use the same letter in designating a numeric and a string fixed variable. You cannot designate A and A\$ in the same program.

Remember that string fixed variables cannot exceed 7 characters in length:

$$A$ = "TOTAL"$$

The values assigned to a variable can change during the execution of a program, taking on the values typed in or computed during the program. One way to assign a variable is to use the INPUT verb. In the following program the value of A\$ will change in response to the data typed in answering the inquiry "WORD?". Enter this program:

```
10 INPUT "WORD?"; A$
20 B = LEN (A$)
30 PRINT "WORD_IS_"; B; "_LTRS"
40 END ————— means space
```

Before you RUN the program notice several new features. Line 30 of this program exceeds the 16 character maximum of the PC-1401/1402's display. When a line is longer than 16 characters (up to the 79 character maximum), PC-1401/1402 moves the characters to the left as the 16 character maximum is exceeded. This does not destroy the previous input. This move to the left is referred to as horizontal scrolling.

The second new element in this program is the use of the END statement to signal the completion of a program. END tells the computer that the program is completed. It is always good programming practice to use an END statement.

As your programs get more complex you may with to review them before you begin execution. To look at your program, use the LIST command. LIST, which can only be used in the PROgram mode, displays programs beginning with the lowest line number.

Try listing this program:

Input	Display	
LIST	10: I NPUT	"WORD?"

Use the <u>t</u> and <u>t</u> arrows to move through your program until you have reviewed the entire program. To review a line which contains more than 16 characters move the cursor to the extreme right of the display and the additional characters will appear on the screen. After checking your program, run it:

Input	Display
RUN	WORD?_
HELP	WORD IS 4. LTRS
ENTER	>

This is the end of your program. Of course you may begin it again by entering RUN. However, this program would be a bit more entertaining if it presented more than one opportunity for input. We will now modify the program so it will keep running without entering RUN after each answer.

Return to the PRO mode and use the up or down arrows (or LIST) to reach line 40.

You may type 40 to Delete the entire line or use the ▶ to position the cursor over the E in END. Change line 40 so that it reads:

40: GOTO 10

Now RUN the modified program.

The GOTO statement causes the program to loop (keep repeating the same operation). Since you put no limit on the loop it will keep going forever (an "infinite" loop). To stop this program hit the BREAK ( BRK ) key.

#### **Programming**

When you have stopped a program using the Rey, you can restart it using the CONT command. CONT stands for CONTinue. With the CONT command the program will restart on the line which was being executed when the REPK key was pressed.

# Example 4 - More Complex Programming

Although the **PC-1401/1402** has a factorial function we will use an example of the factorial computation in this section to explain more complex programming.

The following program computes N Factorial (N!). The program begins with 1 and computes N! up to the limit which you enter. Enter this program.

100 F = 1: WAIT 118 110 INPUT "LIMIT? "; L 120 FOR N = 1 TO L 130 F = F \* N 140 PRINT N, F 150 NEXT N 160 END

Several new features are contained in this program. The WAIT verb in line 100 controls the length of time that displays are held before the program continues. The numbers and their factorials are displayed as they are computed. The time they appear on the display is set by the WAIT statement to approximately 2 seconds, instead of waiting for you to press **ENTER**.

Also in line 100, notice that there are two statements on the same line separated by a colon (:). You may put as many statements as you wish on one line, separating each by a colon, up to the 80 character maximum including ENTER. Multiple statement lines can make a program hard to read and modify, however, so it is good programming practice to use them only where the statements are very simple or there is some special reason to want the statements on one line.

Also in this program we have used the FOR verb in line 120 and the NEXT verb in line 150 to create a loop. In Example 3 you created an "infinite" loop which kept repeating the statements inside the loop until you pressed the REXT loop the PC-1401/1402 adds 1 to N each time execution reaches the NEXT verb. It then tests to see if N is larger than the limit L. If N is less than or equal to L, execution returns to the top of the loop and the statements are executed again. If N is greater than L, execution continues with line 160 and the program stops.

You may use any numeric variable in a FOR/NEXT loop. You also do not have to start counting at 1 and you can add any amount at each step. See Chapter 8 for details.

We have labelled this program with line numbers starting with 100. Labelling programs with different line numbers allows you to have several programs in memory at one time. To RUN this program instead of the one at line 10 enter:

## **RUN 100**

In addition to executing different programs by giving their starting line number, you can give programs a letter name and start them with the DEF key (see Chapter 6).

You will notice that while the program is running, the BUSY indicator is lit at those times that there is nothing on the display. RUN the program a few more times and try setting N at several different values.

# Storing Programs in the PC-1401/1402's Memory

Programs remain in memory when you turn off the PC-1401/1402, or it undergoes an AUTO OFF. Even if you use the BRK, C-CE or CA keys the programs will remain.

Programs are lost from memory only when you perform the following actions:

- \* You enter NEW before beginning programming.
- \* You initialize the computer using the ALL RESET button.
- \* You create a new program using the SAME LINE NUMBERS as a program already in memory.
- You change the batteries.

This brief introduction to programming on the PC-1401/1402 should serve to illustrate the exciting programming possibilities of your new computer.

#### CAUTION:

For programming the preprogrammed command/function keys can not be used within the quotation marks. Using the preprogrammed command/function keys within quotation marks will cause an error. Be sure to use the alphabetic keys within quotation marks as follows;

## Examples:

1. 10 : INPUT "INPUT = " ; A Correct: 10 SHIFT INPUT S

Correct: 10 SHIFT " I N P U T = SHIFT " SHIFT " SHIFT "

Incorrect: 10 SHIFT WPUT SHIFT " SHIFT " SHIFT ;

A ENTER → ERROR 1

2. 20 : PRINT "SIN ="; A

Correct: 20 SHIFT PRINT SHIFT " S | N = SHIFT " SHIFT ;

A ENTER

Incorrect: 20 SHIFT PRINT SHIFT " SIN = SHIFT " SHIFT ; A

ENTER → ERROR 1

# CHAPTER 6 SHORTCUTS

The PC-1401/1402 includes several features which make programming more convenient by reducing the number of keystrokes required to enter repetitive material.

One such feature is in the availability of abbreviations for verbs and commands (See Chapter 8)

This chapter discusses the additional feature which can eliminate unnecessary typing — the DEF key.

## The DEF Key and Labelled Programs

Often you will want to store several different programs in the PC-1401/1402's memory at one time. (Remember that each must have unique line numbers). Normally, to start a program with a RUN or GOTO command, you need to remember the beginning line number of each program (see Chapter 8). But, there is an easier way! You can label each program with a letter and execute the program using only two keystrokes. This is how to label a program and execute it using DEF:

Note: Put a label on the first line of each program that you want to reference.

The label consists of a single character in quotes, followed by a colon:

10: "A": PRINT "FIRST"

20: END

80: "B": PRINT "SECOND"

90: END

Any one of the following characters can be used: A, S, D, F, G, H, J, K, L, ,, Z, X, C, V, B, N, M, and SPC. Notice that these are the keys in the last two rows of the alphabetic portion of the keyboard.

Note: To execute the program, instead of typing RUN 80 or GOTO 10, you need only press the DEF key and then the letter used as a label. In the above example, pressing DEF and then 'B' would cause 'SECOND' to appear on the display.

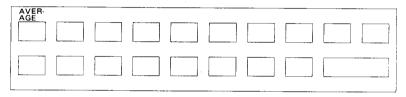
When DEF is used to execute a program, variables and mode settings are affected in the same way as when GOTO is used. See Chapter 8 for details.

# **Template**

One template is provided with the **PC-1401/1402**. You can use this template to help you remember frequently used DEF key assignments. After you have labelled the programs, mark the template so you know what is associated with each key. You can then execute programs using the two-keystroke operation.

For example, if you have one group of programs which you often use at the same time, label the programs with letters and mark the template so that you can easily begin execution of any of the programs with two keystrokes.

E:	хa	m	p	le	:
----	----	---	---	----	---



# CHAPTER 7 USING THE CE-126P PRINTER/ CASSETTE INTERFACE

The optional CE-126P Printer/Cassette Interface allows you to add a printer and to connect a cassette recorder to your SHARP PC-1401/1402 Computer.

### The CE-126P features:

- \* 24 character wide thermal printer.
- \* Convenient paper feed and tear bar.
- \* Simultaneous printing of calcualtions as desired. (Except the CAL mode)
- \* Easy control of display or printer output in BASIC.
- \* Built-in cassette interface with remote function.
- Manual and program control of recorder for storing programs, data,
- \* Dry battery operation for portability.

For connecting the PC-1401/1402 to the CE-126P, refer to the instruction manual which is supplied with the CE-126P.

# **Using the Printer**

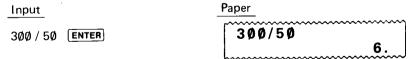
If you are using the PC-1401/1402 for manual calculation, you may use the CE-126P to simultaneously print your calculations.

## CAUTION:

The result which is obtained by the direct calculation feature in manual calculation can not be printed. The calculation in CAL mode can not also be printed.

This is easily accomplished by pressing the  $\overline{\text{SHIFT}}$  key and then the  $\overline{\text{ENTER}}$  key  $(P \leftrightarrow NP)$  while in the RUN mode.

The printer indicator (a dash symbol) will appear just above the "PRINT" label in the lower right area of the display. After this, when you press the **ENTER** at the end of a calculation, the contents of the display will be printed on one line and the results will be printed on the next. For example:



You may print output on the printer from within BASIC programs by using the LPRINT statement (see Chapter 8 for details). LPRINT can be used in the same form as the PRINT statement. The difference is that if you PRINT something to the display which is longer than 16 characters, there is no way for you to see the extra characters. With the LPRINT verb, the extra characters will be printed on a second and possibly a third line as is required.

Programs which have been written with PRINT can be converted to work with the printer by including a PRINT=LPRINT statement in the program (see Chapter 8 for details). All PRINT statements following this statement will act as if they were LPRINT statements. PRINT=PRINT will reset this condition to its normal state. This structure may also be included in a program in an IF statement allowing a choice of output at the time the program is used.

You may also list your programs on the printer with the LLIST command (see Chapter 8 for details). If used without line numbers LLIST will list all program lines currently in memory in their numerical order by line number. A line number range may also be given with LLIST to limit the lines which will be printed. When program lines are longer than 24 characters, two or more lines may be used to print one program line. The second and succeeding line will be indented four or six characters so that the line number will clearly identify each separate program line. (Line number, 1 to 999: four, over 999: six)

## Caution:

- In case an error (ERROR code 8) occurs due to a paper misfeed, tear off the paper tape, and pull the remaining part of the paper tape completely out of the printer. Then press the CCE key to clear the error condition.
- When the printer is exposed to strong external electrical noise, it may print numbers at random. If this happens, depress the RK key to stop the printing.
   Turn the CE-126P power off and on, and then press the CCE key.

Pressing the C-CE key will return the printer to its normal condition.

When the printer causes a paper misfeed or is exposed to strong external electrical noise while printing, it may not operated normally and only the symbol "BUSY" is displayed. If this happens, depress the Rev to stop printing. (Release the paper misfeed.) Turn the CE-126P power off and on, and then press the Rev.

 When the CE-126P is not in use, turn off the printer switch to save the battery life.

## Using the Cassette Interface

Using this cassette interface will allow you to store programs and data from the computer onto cassette tape (of course you'll also need a cassette recorder such as well sell for this pocket computer system; optional cassette tape recorder, model CE-152). Once on tape, you can load these programs and data back into the computer with a simple procedure.

# Connecting the CE-126P to a Tape Recorder

Only three connections are necessary:

- 1. Connect red plug into the MICrophone jack on the cassette recorder.
- 2. Connect gray plug into the EARphone jack on the cassette recorder.
- 3. Connect the black plug into the REMote jack on the cassette recorder.

## Cassette Tape Recorder

We recommend you to use an optional cassette tape recorder CE-152 for your pocket computer system. The CE-152 designed to match the PC-1401/1402 records programs and data via the CE-126P cassette interface. Any recorded program can be retrieved and reloaded into the PC-1401/1402.

When you use any other cassette tape recorder than the CE-152:

The following is a description of the minimum tape recorder specifications necessary for interfacing with the CE-126P:

Item	Requirements	
1. Recorder Type	Any tape recorder, standard cassette or micro-cassette recorder, may be used in accordance with the requirements outlined below.	
2. Input Jack	The recorder should have a mini-jack input labeled "MIC". Never use the "AUX" jack.	
3. Input Impedance	The input jack should be a low impedance input (200 $\sim$ 1,000 OHM.)	
4. Minimum Input Level	Below 3 mV or -50 dB.	
5. Output jack	Should be a minijack labeled "EXT. (EXTernal speaker)", "MONITOR", "EAR (EARphone)" or quivalent.	
6. Output impedance	Should be below 10 OHM.	
7. Output level	Should be above 1V (practical maximum output above 100 mW)	
8. Distortion	Should be within 15% within a range of 2 KHz through 4 KHz.	
9. Wow and Flutter	0.3% maximum (W.R.M.S)	
10. Other	Recorder motor should not fluctuate speed.	

<sup>\*</sup> In case the miniplug provided with the CE-126P is not compatible with the input/output jacks of your tape recorder special line conversion plugs are available on the market.

## NOTE:

 Some tape recorders may reject connection due to different specifications. Or those tape recorders having distortion, increased noise, and power deterioration after long years of use may not show satisfactory results owing to change in their electrical characteristics.

## Operating the Cassette Interface and Recorder

## Recording (saving) onto magnetic tape

See Tape Notes.

- 1. Turn off the REMOTE switch on the CE-126P.
- 2. Enter a program or data into the Computer.
- 3. Load tape into the tape recorder.

Determine the position on the tape where you want to record the program.

- When using a tape, be sure the tape moves past the clear leader (non-magnetic mylar material).
- When using a tape already partially recorded, search for a location where no recording is.
- Connect the Interface's red plug to the tape recorder's MIC jack and the black plug to the REM jack.
- 5. Turn on the REMOTE switch.
- Simultaneously press record and play buttons on the tape recorder (to put it in record mode).
- 7. Input recording instructions (CSAVE statement, PRINT# statement), and press the ENTER key for execution.



When you press the **ENTER** key, tape motion will begin, leaving about a 8-second non-signal blank. (Beep tone is recorded.) After that, the file name and its contents are recorded.

8. When the recording is complete, the PROMPT symbol (>) will be displayed and the tape recorder will automatically stop. Now you have your program on tape (it still is in the Pocket Computer also).

When data is to be automatically recorded by program execution (PRINT # statement, not manual operation), set up steps 1 thru 6 before executing the program.

To aid you in locating programs on tapes, use the tape counter on the recorder.

## Collating the Computer and Tape Contents

See tape Notes.

After loading or transferring a program to or from tape, you can verify that the program on tape and program in the Pocket Computer are identical (and thus be sure that everything is OK before continuing your programming or execution of programs).

- 1. Turn off the REMOTE switch.
- 2. With cassette in the recorder, operate the tape motion controls to position tape at the point just before the appropriate file name to be checked.
- 3. Connect gray plug to EARphone and black plug to REMote jacks.
- 4. Turn on the REMOTE switch.
- 5. Press PLAY button of recorder.

6.	Input a CLOAD? statement and start execution with	h ENTER	key. D	o this as
	follows: Set unit to "RUN" or "PRO" mode.	The file nea	ao whioh	
	Enter the following key sequence —	The file nan	eviously.	
	C L O A D SHIFT ? SHIFT " A	A A SHI	FT "	ENTER

The Pocket Computer will automatically search for the specified file name and will compare the contents on tape with the contents in memory.

During the collation, the mark "\*" is shown at the right most digit of the display. The mark "\*" will disappear when the collation is completed. While a file name is being retrieved, no "\*" mark will be displayed as the collation is not started yet.

(The same occurs when the first program is read without a file name.)

If the programs are verified as being identical, a PROMPT symbol (>) will be displayed on the Pocket Computer.

If the programs differ, execution will be interrupted and an Error code 8 will be displayed. If this occurs, try again.

# Loading from a magnetic tape

See Tape Notes.

To load, transfer, or read out programs and data from magnetic tape into the Pocket Computer, use the following procedure.

- 1. Turn off the REMOTE switch.
- Load tape in the tape recorder. Position tape just before the portion to be read out.

#### Printer/Cassette Interface

Connect the gray plug to the EAR jack on the tape recorder, and the black plug to the REM jack.

[In using a tape recorder having no REM terminal, press the PAUSE button to make a temporary stop.]

- 4. Turn on the REMOTE switch.
- 5. Push the PLAY button on the tape recorder (to put unit in playback mode).

Set the VOLUME control to middle or maximum.

Set Tone to maximum treble.

6. Input transfer instructions (CLOAD statement, INPUT # statement), and press **ENTER** key for execution.

Put the unit into "RUN" mode.	Then push the following keys; C L O
A D SHIFT " file name	SHIFT . (To load the contents of
	; Eg. I N P U T SHIFT #
ENTER .)	

Eg. C L O A D SHIFT " A A SHIFT " ENTER

The specified file name will be automatically searched for and its contents will be transferred into the Pocket Computer.

The mark "\*" appears while loading the designated CSAVEd program from the tape to the computer's memory.

(The same occurs when the first program is read without a file name,)

The mark "\*" disappears when the load is performed completely.

7. When the program has been transferred the Computer will automatically stop the tape motion and display the PROMPT (>) symbol.

To transfer data (INPUT # statement) in the course of a program, set up steps 1 thru 5 prior to executing the program.

#### Notes:

- If an error occurs (error code "8" is displayed), start over from the beginning. If the error continues, adjust volume up or down slightly.
- If the error code is not displayed but tape motion continues (while the Pocket Computer displays the symbol "BUSY"), transferring is improper.
   Press BRK key (to "break") to stop the tape. Repeat steps.
- If the error remains or the tape continues to run after several attempts to correct the problem, try clearning and demagnetizing the Recorder's tape head.

## CAUTION:

After storing a program on a tape, be sure to verify the saved contents by using the statement and the procedure described on page 101. If an error occurs as a result of repeated verification operations, try the following calculation after placing your computer in the RUN mode.

If the result of either of these calculations is an integer value  $(1, 2, 3, \ldots, 29)$ , reduce one line (combine two lines into one) from, or add one line (divide one line into two) to your program, then store it again.

Now verify the stored contents again.

If the error still occurs, relocate the program to another section of the tape, or use another tape. Otherwise there may be some problems with your tape recorder. Check your tape recorder.

## Printer/Cassette Interface

## Tape notes

- For any transfer or collation, use the tape recorder that was used for recording.
   If the tape recorders for transfer or collation is different from that used for recording, no transfer or collation may be possible.
- Always use only the highest quality tape for programs and data storage (economy grade audio type tape may not provide the proper characteristics for digital recordings).
- 3) Keep the tape heads and tape handling parts clean—use a cassette cleaner tape to keep everything clean.
- 4) Volume setting set to middle or maximum level.
  Volume level can be very important when reading in data from the recorder;
  make slight adjustments as required to obtain error-free data transfer. A slight adjustment either up or down may result in perfect results every time.
- 5) Be sure all connections between the pocket computer and cassette interface are secure. And be sure the connections between interface and recorder are secure and dirt-free.
- 6) If problems occur when using AC power for the CE-126P and/or the recorder, use battery power instead (sometimes the AC power connection also adds some "hum" to the signal which upsets proper digital recordings).
  - To connect the AC adaptor to the CE-126P, turn the CE-126P power off and then connect the adaptor to the CE-126P.
- 7) Tone control set to maximum treble.
- 8) When recording programs or data on the used tape, erase the portion before writing and execute the recording command. (Make sure that the previous program is completely erased without any portion remaining.)

# CHAPTER 8 BASIC REFERENCE

The following chapter is divided into three sections:

Commands: Instructions which are used outside a program to change the

working environment, perform utilities, or control programs.

Verbs: Action words used in programs to construct BASIC statements.

Functions: Special operators used in BASIC programs to change one variable

into another.

Commands and verbs are arranged alphabetically. Each entry is on a separate page for easy reference. The contents of each section is shown in the tables below so that you can quickly identify the category to which an operator belongs. Functions are grouped according to four categories and arranged alphabetically within category.

#### Commands

Program Control	Variables Control
CONT	CLEAR
GOTO*	DIM*
NEW	
RUN	Angle Mode Control
	DEGREE*
Cassette Control	GRAD*
CLOAD	RADIAN*
CLOAD?	
CSAVE	Other
INPUT#*	BEEP*
PRINT#*	PASS
	RANDOM*
Debugging	USING*
LIST	WAIT*
LLIST	
TROFF*	
TRON*	

<sup>\*</sup>These commands are also BASIC verbs. Their effect as commands is identical to their effect as verbs so they are not described in the command reference section. See the verb reference section for more information.

### **Verbs**

### Control and Branching

**END** 

FOR . . . TO . . . STEP

GOSUB GOTO

IF ... THEN

NEXT

ON . . . GOSUB ON . . . GOTO

RETURN

STOP

### Assignment and Declaration

CLEAR

DIM

LET

#### Input and Output

AREAD

CSAVE DATA

INPUT

INPUT#

LPRINT PAUSE

PRINT #

USING

READ RESTORE

WAIT

#### Other

BEEP

DEGREE

GRAD

RADIAN RANDOM

REM

TROFF

# **Functions**

Pseudovariables	Numeric Functions
INKEY\$	ABS
MEM	ACS
PI	AHC
	AHS
String Functions	AHT
ASC	ASN
CHR\$	ATN
LEFT\$	cos
LEN	CUR
MID\$	DEG
RIGHT\$	DMS
STR\$	EXP
VAL	FACT
	HCS
	HSN
	HTN
	INT
	LN
	LOG
	POL
	RCP
	REC
	RND
	ROT

SGN SIN SQR SQU TAN TEN

# **COMMANDS**

1 CLOAD

2 CLOAD "filename"

Abbreviations: CLO., CLOA.

See also: CLOAD?, PASS

### **Purpose**

The CLOAD command is used to load a program saved on cassette tape. It can be used with the optional **CE-126P** Printer/Cassette Interface and Cassette Recorder.

#### Use

The first form of the CLOAD command clears the memory of existing programs and loads the first program stored on the tape, starting at the current position.

The second form of the CLOAD command clears the memory, searches the tape for the program whose name is given by "filename", and loads the program.

If the PC-1401/1402 is in PROgram or RUN mode, program memory is loaded from the tape.

### **Examples**

CLOAD Loads the first program from the tape.

CLOAD "PRO3" Searches the tape for the program named 'PRO3' and loads it.

#### Notes:

- 1. If the designated file name is not retrieved, the computer will continue to search the file name even after the tape reaches the end. In this case, stop the retrieval function by pressing the ON Rew Rey. This applies to CLOAD? and INPUT# commands to be described later.
- If an error occurs during CLOAD command (to be described later) execution, the program stored in the computer will be invalid.

1 CLOAD?

2 CLOAD? "filename"

Abbreviations: CLO.?, CLOA.?

See also: CLOAD, PASS

#### **Purpose**

The CLOAD? command is used to compare a program saved on cassette tape with one stored in memory. It can be used with the optional **CE-126P** Printer/Cassette Interface and Cassette Recorder.

#### Use

The first form of the CLOAD? command compares the program stored in memory with the first program stored on the tape, starting at the current position.

The second form of the CLOAD? command searches the tape for the program whose name is given by "filename" and then compares it to the program stored in memory.

### **Examples**

CLOAD? Compares the first program from the tape with the one in memory.

CLOAD? "PRO3" Searches the tape for the program named "PRO3" and compares it to the one stored in memory.

#### Commands CONT

#### 1 CONT

Abbreviations: C., CO., CON.

See also: RUN, STOP verb

### **Purpose**

The CONT command is used to continue a program which has been temporarily halted.

### Use

When the STOP verb is used to halt a program during execution, the program can be continued by entering CONT in response to the prompt.

When a program is halted using the BRK key, the program can be continued by entering CONT in response to the prompt.

### Examples

CONT Continues an interrupted program execution.

1 CSAVE

2 CSAVE "filename"

3 CSAVE, "password"

4 CSAVE "filename", "password"

Abbreviations: CS., CSA., CSAV.

See also: CLOAD, CLOAD?, PASS

### **Purpose**

The CSAVE command is used to save a program to cassette tape. It can be used with the optional CE-126P Printer/Cassette Interface and Cassette Recorder.

### Use

The first form of the CSAVE command writes all of the programs in memory on to the cassette tape without a specified file name.

The second form of the CSAVE command writes all of the programs in memory on to the cassette tape and assigns the indicated file name.

The third form of the CSAVE command writes all of the programs in memory on to the cassette tape without a specified file name and assigns the indicated password. Programs saved with a password may be loaded by anyone, but only someone who knows the password can list or modify the programs. (See discussion under PASS command).

The fourth form of the CSAVE command writes all of the programs in memory on to the cassette tape and assign them the indicated file name and password.

If the PC-1401/1402 is in PROgram or RUN mode, program memory is loaded to the tape.

### **Examples**

CSAVE "PRO3", "SECRET" Saves the programs now in memory on to the tape under the name 'PRO3', protected with the password 'SECRET'.

#### Commands GOTO

1 GOTO expression

Abbreviations: G., GO., GOT.

See also: RUN

### **Purpose**

The GOTO command is used to start execution of a program.

#### Use

The GOTO command can be used in place of the RUN command to start program execution at the line number specified by the expression.

GOTO differs from RUN in five respects:

- 1) The value of the interval for WAIT is not reset.
- 2) The display format established by USING statements is not cleared.
- 3) Variables and arrays are preserved.
- 4) PRINT = LPRINT status is not reset.
- 5) The pointer for READ is not reset.

Execution of a program with GOTO is identical to execution with the DEF key.

### **Examples**

GOTO 100

Begins execution of the program at line 100.

1 LIST

2 LIST expression

Abbreviations: L., LI., LIS.

See also: LLIST

### **Purpose**

The LIST command is used to display a program.

### Use

The LIST command may only be used in the PROgram mode. The first form of the LIST command displays the statement with the lowest line number.

The second form displays the statement with the nearest line number equal to or greater than the value of the expression. The Up Arrow and Down Arrow keys may then be used to examine the program.

### **Examples**

LIST 100

Displays line number 100.

#### Commands LLIST

1 LLIST

2 LLIST expression

3 LLIST expression 1, expression 2

4 LLIST expression,

5 LLIST, expression

Abbreviations: LL., LLI., LLIS.

See also: LIST

### **Purpose**

The LLIST command is used for printing a program on the optional CE-126P Printer/Cassette Interface.

#### Use

The LLIST command may be used in the PROgram or RUN mode.

The first form prints all of the programs in memory.

The second form prints only the program line whose line number is given by expression.

The third form prints the statements from the line number with the nearest line equal to or greater than the value of expression 1 to the nearest line equal to or greater than the value of expression 2. There must be at least two lines between the two numbers.

The forth form prints program lines beginning with the line whose number is given by the expression.

The fifth form prints all program lines up to, and including, the line whose number is given by the expression.

### **Examples**

LLIST 100, 200 Lists the statements between line numbers 100 and 200.

1 NEW

Abbreviations: none

### **Purpose**

The NEW command is used to clear existing program.

### Use

When used in the PROgram mode the NEW command clears all programs and data which are currently in memory.

The NEW command is not defined in the RUN mode and will result in an ERROR 9.

### **Examples**

NEW

Clears program or data.

#### Commands PASS

1 PASS "character string"

Abbreviations: PA., PAS. See also: CSAVE. CLOAD

### **Purpose**

The PASS command is used to set and cancel passwords.

#### Use

Passwords are used to protect programs from inspection or modification by other users. A password consists of a character string which is **no more than seven characters long.** The seven characters must be alphabetic or one of the following special symbols:  $! \# \% \& () * + -/, : ; < = > ? @ \sqrt{\pi} \land$ 

Once a PASS command has been given the programs in memory are protected. A password protected program cannot be examined or modified in memory. It cannot be output to tape or listed with LIST or LLIST, nor is it possible to add or delete program lines. If several programs are in memory and PASS is entered, all programs in memory are protected. The only way to remove this protection is to execute another PASS command with the same password or to enter NEW (which erases the programs).

#### Examples

PASS "SECRET" Establishes the password 'SECRET' for all programs in memory.

1 RUN

2 RUN line number

Abbreviations: R., RU.

See also: GOTO

#### **Purpose**

The RUN command is used to execute a program in memory.

#### Use

The first form of the RUN command executes a program beginning with the lowest numbered statement in memory.

The second form of the RUN command executes a program beginning with the specified line number.

RUN differs from GOTO in five respects:

- 1) The value of the interval for WAIT is reset.
- 2) The display format established by USING statements is cleared.
- 3) Variables and arrays other than the fixed variables are cleared.
- 4) PRINT = PRINT status is set.
- 5) The pointer for READ is reset to the beginning DATA statement.

Execution of a program with GOTO is identical to execution with the DEF key. In all three forms of program execution FOR/NEXT and GOSUB nesting is cleared.

#### Examples

**RUN 100** 

Executes the program which begins at line number 100.

## **VERBS**

### 1 AREAD variable name

Abbreviations: A., AR., ARE., AREA.

See also: INPUT verb and discussion of the use of the DEF key in

Chapter 6

#### **Purpose**

The AREAD verb is used to read in a single value to a program which is started using the <code>DEF</code> key.

#### Use

When a program is labelled with a letter, so that it can be started using the DEF key, the AREAD verb can be used to enter a single starting value without the use of the INPUT verb. The AREAD verb must appear on the first line of the program following the label. If it appears elsewhere in the program, it will be ignored. Either a numeric or string variable may be used, but only one can be used per program.

To use the AREAD verb type the desired value in the RUN mode, press the DEF key, followed by the letter which identifies the program. If a string variable is being used, it is not necessary to enclose the entered string in quotes.

#### Examples

10 "X": AREAD N

20 PRINT N^2

3Ø END

Entering "7 DEF X" will produce a display of "49".

#### Notes:

- 1. When the display indicates PROMPT (">") at the start of program execution, the designated variable is cleared.
- 2. When the contents is displayed by PRINT verb at the start of program execution, the following is stored:

 When the display indicates PRINT numeric expression, numeric expression or PRINT "String", "String", the contents on the right of the display are stored.

Example: When the program below is executed;

10 "A": PRINT "ABC", "DEFG"

20 "S": AREAD A\$: PRINT A\$

RUN mode

DEF A → ABC DEFG

DEF S → DEFG

- When the display indicates PRINT Numeric expression; Numeric expression..., the contents displayed first (on the extreme left) are stored.
- When the display indicates PRINT "String"; "String"; "String"..., the "String" designated last are stored.

#### Verbs BEEP

#### 1 BEEP expression

Abbreviations: B., BE., BEE.

### Purpose

The BEEP verb is used to produce an audible tone.

#### Use

The BEEP verb causes the **PC-1401/1402** to emit one or more audible tones at 4 kHz. The number of beeps is determined by the expression, which must be numeric. (Positive number less then 9.999999999E+99) The expression is evaluated, but only the integer part is used to determine the number of beeps.

BEEP may also be used as a command using numeric literals and predefined variables. In this case the beeps occur immediately after the ENTER key is pressed.

### **Examples**

10 A = 5 : B\$ = "9"

20 BEEP 3 Produces 3 beeps.

30 BEEP A Produces 5 beeps.

40 BEEP (A+4)/2 Produces 4 beeps.

50 BEEP B\$ This is illegal and will produce an ERROR 9 message.

60 BEEP -4 Produces no beeps, but does not produce an error message.

#### 1 CLEAR

Abbreviations: CL., CLE., CLEA.

See also: DIM

### **Purpose**

The CLEAR verb is used to erase all variables which have been used in the program and to reset all preallocated variables to zero or NUL.

#### Use

The CLEAR verb recovers space which is being used to store variables. This might be done when the variables used in the first part of a program are not required in the second part and available space is limited. CLEAR may also be used at the beginning of a program when several programs are resident in memory and you want to clear out the space used by execution of prior programs.

CLEAR does not free up the space used by the variables A - Z, A\$ - Z\$, or A(1) - A(26) (without DIM declaration) since they are permanently assigned (see Chapter 4). CLEAR does reset numeric variables to zero and string variables to NUL.

### Examples

10 A = 5 : DIM C(5)

20 CLEAR

Frees up the space assigned to C( ) and resets A to zero.

#### Verbs DATA

#### 1 DATA expression list

Where: expression list is: expression

or: expression, expression list

Abbreviations: DA., DAT.
See also: READ, RESTORE

### **Purpose**

The DATA verb is used to provide values for use by the READ verb.

#### Use

When assigning initial values to an array, it is convenient to list the values in a DATA statement and use a READ statement in a FOR... NEXT loop to load the values into the array. When the first READ is executed, the first value in the first DATA statement is returned. Succeeding READs use succeeding values in the sequential order in which they appear in the program, regardless of how many values are listed in each DATA statement or how many DATA statements are used.

DATA statements have no effect if encountered in the course of regular execution of the program, so they can be inserted wherever it seems appropriate. Many programmers like to include them immediately following the READ which uses them. If desired, the values in a DATA statement can be read a second time by using the RESTORE statement.

### **Examples**

10 DIM B (10) Sets up an array.

20 WAIT 128

30 FOR I = 1 TO 10

40 READ B(I) Loads the values from the DATA statement into B()

50 PRINT B(1) B(1) will be 10. B(2) will be 20. B(3) will be 30.

60 NEXT I etc.

7Ø DATA 1Ø, 2Ø, 3Ø, 4Ø, 5Ø, 6Ø

8Ø DATA 7Ø, 8Ø, 9Ø, 1ØØ

9Ø END

#### 1 DEGREE

Abbreviations: DE., DEG., DEGR., DEGRE.

See also: GRAD and RADIAN

### **Purpose**

The DEGREE verb is used to change the form of angular values to decimal degrees.

#### Use

The **PC-1401/1402** has three forms for representing angular values — decimal degrees, radians and gradient. These forms are used in specifying the arguments to the SIN, COS, and TAN functions and in returning the results from the ASN, ACS, and ATN functions.

The DEGREE function changes the form for all angular values to decimal degree form until a GRAD or RADIAN verb is used. The DMS and DEG functions can be used to convert decimal degrees to degree, minute, second form and vice versa. The REC and POL functions can be used to convert polar coordinates to rectangular and vice versa.

### **Examples**

10 DEGREE 20 X = ASN 1 30 PRINT X

X now has a value of 90, i.e. 90 degrees, the Arcsine of 1.

# Verbs

1 DIM	dim list		
Where:	dim list	is:	dimension spec.
		or:	dimension spec., dim list
and:	dimension spec.	is:	numeric dim spec.
		or:	string dim spec.
and:	numeric dim spec	is:	numeric name (size)
and:	string dim spec	is:	string name (dims)
		or:	string name (dims) * len
and:	numeric name	is:	valid numeric variable name
and:	string name	is:	valid string variable name
and:	dims	is:	size
		or:	size, size
and:	size	is:	number of elements
and:	len	is:	length of each string in a string array
Abbrevi	ations: D., DI.		

### **Purpose**

The DIM verb is used to reserve space for numeric and string array variables.

#### Use

Except for the array of the form; A( ), A\$( ), two-character( ), and two-character\$( ), a DIM verb must be used to reserve space for any array variable.

The maximum number of dimensions in any array is two; the maximum size of any one dimension is 255. In addition to the number of elements specified in the dimension statement, one additional "zeroeth" element is reserved. For example, DIM B(3) reserves B( $\emptyset$ ), B(1), B(2), and B(3). In two dimensional arrays there is an extra "zeroeth" row and column.

In string arrays one specifies the size of each string element in addition to the number of elements. For example, DIM B\$(3)\*12 reserves space for 4 strings which are each a maximum of 12 characters long. If the length is not specified each string can contain a maximum of 16 characters.

When a numeric array is dimensioned, all values are initially set to zero; in a string array the values are set to NUL.

Refer to array variables on page 74.

For the array A and A\$ DIM declaration, refer to the paragraph discussing variables.

### **Examples**

10 DIM B(10)

Reserves space for a numeric array with 11 elements.

20 DIM C\$(4,4)\*10 Reserves space for a two dimensional string array with 5 rows and 5 columns; each string will be a maximum of 10 characters.

#### Verbs END

#### 1 END

Abbreviations: E., EN.

### **Purpose**

The END verb is used to signal the end of a program.

### Use

When multiple programs are loaded into memory at the same time a mark must be included to indicate where each program ends so that execution does not continue from one program to another. This is done by including an END verb as the last statement in the program.

### **Examples**

10 PRINT "HELLO" With these programs in memory a 'RUN 10' prints

20 END 'HELLO', but not 'GOODBYE'. 'RUN 30' prints

30 PRINT "GOODBYE" 'GOODBYE'.

40 END

1 FOR <u>numeric variable</u> = <u>expression 1</u> TO <u>expression 2</u>
2 FOR <u>numeric variable</u> = <u>expression 1</u> TO <u>expression 2</u>

STEP expression 3

Abbreviations: F. and FO.; STE.

See also: NEXT

#### **Purpose**

The FOR verb is used in combination with the NEXT verb to repeat a series of operations a specified number of times.

#### Use

The FOR and the NEXT verbs are used in pairs to enclose a group of statements which are to be repeated. The first time this group of statements is executed the loop variable (the variable named immediately following the FOR) has the value of expression 1.

When execution reaches the NEXT verb the loop variable is increased by the step size and then this value is tested against expression 2. If the value of the loop variable is less than or equal to expression 2, the enclosed group of statements is executed again, starting with the statement following the FOR. In the first form the step size is 1; in the second form the step size is given by expression 3. If the value of the loop variable is greater than expression 2, execution continues with the statement which immediately follows the NEXT. Because the comparison is made at the end, the statements within a FOR/NEXT pair are always executed at least once.

The loop variable may be used within the group of statements, for example as an index to an array, but care should be taken in changing the value of the loop variable.

Programs should be written so that they never jump from outside a FOR/NEXT pair to a statement within a FOR/NEXT pair. Similarly, programs must never leave a FOR/NEXT pair by jumping out. Always exit a FOR/NEXT loop via the NEXT statement. To do this, set the loop variable to a value higher than expression 2.

#### Verbs FOR

The group of statements enclosed by a FOR/NEXT pair can include another pair of FOR/NEXT statements which use a different loop variable as long as the enclosed pair is completely enclosed; i.e., if a FOR statement is included in the group, the matching NEXT must also be included. FOR/NEXT pairs may be "nested" up to five levels deep.

### Examples

120 PRINT X 130 NEXT N

10 FOR I = 1 TO 5 20 PRINT I 30 NEXT I	This group of statements prints the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.
40 FOR N = 10 TO 0 STEP -1- 50 PRINT N 60 NEXT N	This group of statements counts down 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0.
70 FOR N = 1 TO 10 80 X = 1 90 FOR F = 1 TO N 100 X = X * F 110 NEXT F	This group of statements computes and prints N factorial for the numbers from 1 to 10.

1 GOSUB expression

Abbreviations: GOS., GOSU.

See also: GOTO, ON ... GOSUB, ON ... GOTO, RETURN

### Purpose

The GOSUB verb is used to execute a BASIC subroutine.

#### Use

When you wish to execute the same group of statements several times in the course of a program or use a previously written set of statements in several programs, it is convenient to use the BASIC capability for subroutines using the GOSUB and RETURN verbs.

The group of statements is included in the program at some location where they are not reached in the normal sequence of execution. A frequent location is following the END statement which marks the end of the main program. At those locations in the main body of the program — where subroutines are to be executed, include a GOSUB statement with an expression which indicates the starting line number of the subroutine. The last line of the subroutine must be a RETURN. When GOSUB is executed, the PC-1401/1402 transfers control to the indicated line number and processes the statements until a RETURN is reached. Control is then transferred back to the statement following the GOSUB.

A subroutine may include a GOSUB. Subroutines may be "nested" in this fashion up to 10 levels deep.

The expression in a GOSUB statement may not include a comma, e.g., 'A(1, 2)' cannot be used. Since there is an ON... GOSUB structure for choosing different subroutines at given locations in the program, the expression usually consists of just the desired line number. When a numeric expression is used it must evaluate to a valid line number, i.e., 1 to 65279, or an ERROR 4 will occur.

### **Examples**

10 GOSUB 100 20 END 100 PRINT "HELLO" 110 RETURN When this program is run it prints the word 'HELLO' one time.

#### Verbs GOTO

#### 1 GOTO expression

Abbreviations: G., GO., GOT.

See also: GOSUB, ON...GOSUB, ON...GOTO

#### **Purpose**

The GOTO verb is used to transfer control to a specified line number.

#### Use

The GOTO verb transfers control from one location in a BASIC program to another location. Unlike the GOSUB verb, GOTO does not "remember" the location from which the transfer occured.

The expression in a GOTO statement may not include a comma, e.g., 'A(1, 2)' cannot be used. Since there is an ON... GOTO structure for choosing different destinations at given locations in the program, the expression usually consists of just the desired line number. When a numeric expression is used, it must evaluate to a valid line number, i.e., 1 to 65279, or an ERROR 4 will occur.

Well designed programs usually flow simply from beginning to end, except for subroutines executed during the program. Therefore, the principal use of the GOTO verb is as a part of an IF ... THEN statement.

### **Examples**

10 INPUT A\$

20 IF A\$ = "Y" THEN GOTO 50

30 PRINT "NO"

40 GOTO 60

50 PRINT "YES"

60 END

This program prints 'YES' if a 'Y' is entered and prints 'NO' if anything else is entered.

#### 1 GRAD

Abbreviations: GR., GRA.

See also: DEGREE and RADIAN

### **Purpose**

The GRAD verb is used to change the form of angular values to gradient form.

#### Use

The **PC-1401/1402** has three forms for representing angular values — decimal degrees, radians, and gradient. These forms are used in specifying the arguments to the SIN, COS, and TAN functions and in returning the results from the ASN, ACS, and ATN functions.

The GRAD function changes the form for all angular values to gradient form until a DEGREE or RADIAN verb is used. Gradient form represents angular measurement in terms of percent gradient, i.e., a 45° angle is a 50° gradient.

#### Examples

10 GRAD

20 X = ASN 1

30 PRINT X

X now has a value of 100, i.e., a  $100^9$  gradient, the Arcsine of 1.

# Verbs

- 1 IF condition THEN statement
- 2 IF condition statement

Abbreviations: none for IF, T., TH., THE.

### **Purpose**

The IF ... THEN verb pair is used to execute or not execute a statement depending on conditions at the time the program is run.

#### Use

In the normal running of a BASIC programs, statements are executed in the sequence in which they occur. The IF . . . THEN verb pair allows decisions to be made during execution so that a given statement is executed only when desired. When the condition part of the IF statement is true, the statement is executed; when it is False, the statement is skipped.

The condition part of the IF statement can be any relational expression as described in Chapter 4. It is also possible to use a numeric expression as a condition, although the intent of the statement will be less clear. Any expression which evaluates to zero or a negative number is considered False; any which evaluates to a positive number is considered True.

The statement which follows the THEN may be any BASIC statement, including another IF...THEN. If it is a LET statement, the LET verb itself must appear. Unless the statement is an END, GOTO, or ON...GOTO, the statement following the IF...THEN statement is the next one executed regardless of whether the condition is True.

The two forms of the IF statement are identical in action, but the first form is clearer.

#### **Examples**

- 10 INPUT "CONTINUE? "; A\$
- 20 IF A\$ = "YES" THEN GOTO 10
- 30 IF A\$ = "NO" THEN GOTO 60
- 40 PRINT "YES OR NO, PLEASE"
- 50 GOTO 10
- **60 END**

This program continues to ask 'CON-TINUE?' as long as 'YES' is entered; it stops if 'NO' is entered, and complains otherwise. 1 **INPUT** input list

Where: input list is: input group

or: input group, input list

and: input group is: var list

or: prompt, var list

or: prompt; var list

and: var list is: variable

or: variable, var list

and: prompt is: any string constant

Abbrevaitions: I., IN., INP., INPU.

See also: INPUT #, READ

#### **Purpose**

The INPUT verb is used to enter one or more values from the keyboard.

#### Use

When you want to enter different values each time a program is run, use the INPUT verb to enter these values from the keybaord.

In its simplest form the INPUT statement does not include a prompt string, instead a question mark is displayed on the left edge of the display. A value is then entered, followed by the **ENTER** key. This value is assigned to the first variable in the list. If other variables are included in the same INPUT statement, this process is repeated until the list is exhausted.

If a prompt is included in the INPUT statement, the process is exactly the same except that, instead of the question mark, the prompt string is displayed at the left edge of the display. If the prompt string is followed by a semicolon, the cursor is positioned immediately following the prompt. If the prompt is followed by a comma, the prompt is displayed, then when a key is pressed the display is cleared and the first character of the input is displayed at the left edge.

When a prompt is specified and there is more than one variable in the list following it, the second and succeeding variables are prompted with the question mark. If a second prompt is included in the list, it is displayed for the variable which immediately follows it.

#### Verbs INPUT

If the **ENTER** key is pressed and no input is provided, the variable retains the value it had before the INPUT statement.

### **Examples**

10 INPUT	ΈΑ
----------	----

Clears the display and puts a question mark at the left edge.

Displays 'A =' and waits for input data. Displays 'A ='.

When data is input 'A =' disappears and the data is displayed starting at left edge.

Displays 'X = ?' and waits for first input.

After ENTER is pressed, display is cleared and 'Y = ?' is displayed at left edge.

1 INPUT # var list

2 INPUT # "filename"; var list

Where: var list

is: variable

or: variable, var list

Abbreviations: I. #, IN. #, INP. #, INPU. #

See also: INPUT, PRINT #, READ

### **Purpose**

The INPUT # verb is used to enter values from the cassette tape.

### Use and Examples

The following variable types can be specified in the INPUT# statement:

- (1) Fixed variables A, B, C, A(7), D\*, A(20)\*, etc.
- (2) Simple variables --- AA, B3, CP\$, etc.
- (3) Array variables S(\*), HP(\*), K\$(\*), etc.

#### 1) Transferring data to fixed variables

To transfer data from tape to fixed variables, specify the variable names in the INPUT# statement.

This statement transfers data from the cassette file named "DATA 1" to the variables A, B, X, and Y in that order.

To fill all the available fixed variables and, if defined, extended variables (A (27) and beyond) with data transferred from tape, specify the first variable with an asterisk (\*) subscribted to it.

This statement transfers the contents of the tape file "D-2" to variables D through Z and to A(27) and beyond.

This statement transfers the data of the first file found after the tape was started, to the variables A(10) and beyond (to J through Z and A(27) and beyond).

# Verbs

- Note 1. If an array named A is already defined by the DIM statement, it is not possible to define subscripted fixed variables in the form of A(). Also no data transfer to variables A(27) and beyond will occur.
- Note 2. Data transfer to fixed variables and extended variables (A(27) and beyond) will continue until the end of the source data file on the tape is reached or the computer's memory becomes full.

#### 2) Data transfer to simple variables

Data in a tape file can be transferred to simple variables by specifying the desired simple variable names in the INPUT# statement.

This statement transfers data from the tape file named "DM-1" to simple variables AB, Y1, and XY\$.

- Note 1. Numeric data must be transferred to numeric simple variables, and character data must be simple character variables. Cross-transfer is not allowed.
- Note 2. Locations for simple variables must be set aside in the program data area before the INPUT# statement is executed. If not, an error will result. Use assignment statements to reserve the locations for simple variables.

AA = 0 ENTER Use appropriate numeric values or characters in assignment statements to reserve locations for variables.

INPUT#AA, B1\$ ENTER

#### 3) Data transfer to array variables

To transfer data from a tape file to array variables, specify the array name in the INPUT#statement in the form of array name (\*).

50 DIM B(5) 60 INPUT#"DS-4"; B(\*)

This statement transfers data form the tape file named "DS-4" to the variables (B (0) through B (5)) in array B.

- Note 1. Numeric data must be transferred to numeric array variables with the same length as that of the data, character data must be transferred to character array variables with the same length as that of the data. If this rule is not observed, an error will result.
- Note 2. Locations for array variables must be set aside in the program data area before the INPUT# statement is executed. If not, an error will result. Use the DIM statement to define the array in advance.

#### - CAUTION -

If the number of variables specified in the INPUT# statement does not agree with the amount of data recorded on the tape, the following will happen:

- \* If the number of pieces of data recorded on the tape file (to be transferred) is greater than the number of specified variables, data transfer will be performed to the last variable, and the remaining data will be ignored.
- \* If the number of pieces of data recorded in the tape file (to be transferred) is smaller than the number of specified variables, all the file data will be transferred to the variables to the end of the file, and the remaining variables will maintain their previous contents.
  - In this case, however, the computer will continue to wait for data transfer from the tape. To halt this state, you should operate the RRK key.
- \* If the INPUT# statement is executed with no variable name specified in it, an error (ERROR 1) will result.

#### Verbs LET

- 1 LET variable = expression
- 2 variable = expression

Abbreviations: LE.

### **Purpose**

The LET verb is used to assign a value to a variable.

#### Use

The LET verb assigns the value of the expression to the designated variable. The type of the expression must match that of the variable, i.e. only numeric expressions can be assigned to numeric variables and only string expressions can be assigned to string variables. In order to convert from one type to the other, one of the explicit type conversion functions, STR\$ or VAL, must be used.

The LET verb may be omitted in all LET statements except those which appear in the THEN clause of an IF... THEN statement. In this one case the LET verb must be used.

#### Examples

10 I = 10

20 A = 5 \* 1

30 X\$ = STR\$ (A)

40 IF I >= 10 THEN LET Y\$=X\$+".00"

Assigns the value 10 to I.

Assigns the value 50 to A.

Assigns the value '50' to X\$.

Assigns the value '50.00' to Y\$.

1 LPRINT print expr

2 LPRINT print expr , print expr

3 LPRINT print list

Where: print list

or: print expr; print list

is: print expr

and: print expr is: expression

or: USING clause; expression

The USING clause is described separately under USING

Abbreviations: LP., LPR., LPRI., LPRIN.

See also: PAUSE, PRINT, USING, and WAIT

#### **Purpose**

The LPRINT verb is used to print information on the printer of the optional CE-126P Printer/Cassette Interface.

#### Use

The LPRINT verb is used to print prompting information, results of calculations, etc. The first form of the LPRINT statement prints a single value. If the expression is numeric, the value will be printed at the far right edge of the paper. If it is a string expression, the print is made starting at the far left.

With the second form of the LPRINT statement the paper is divided into two 12 character halves and the two values are printed in each half according to the same rules as above.

With the third form the print always starts at the left edge and each value is printed immediately following the previous value from left to right with no intervening space.

It is possible to cause PRINT statements to work as LPRINT statements. See the PRINT verb for details.

If an LPRINT statement contains more than 24 characters, the first 24 are printed on one line, the next 24 on the next line, and so forth.

Unlike PRINT, there is no halt or wait after execution of an LPRINT statement.

#### Verbs LPRINT

### Examples

10 A=10: B=20: X\$ = "ABCDEF"

20 LPRINT A

30 LPRINT X\$

40 LPRINT A, B

50 LPRINT A; B; X\$

### Paper

10. ABCDEF 10. 20. 10.20.ABCDEF

### 1 NEXT numeric variable

Abbreviations: N., NE., NEX.

See also: FOR

## **Purpose**

The NEXT verb is used to mark the end of a group of statements which are being repeated in a FOR/NEXT loop.

## Use

The use of the NEXT verb is described under FOR. The numeric variable in a NEXT statement must match the numeric variable in the corresponding FOR.

## Examples

10 FOR I = 1 TO 10

20 PRINT I

30 NEXT I

Print the numbers from 1 to 10 each time the ENTER is pressed.

#### Verbs ON...GOSUB

1 ON expression GOSUB expression list

Where: expression list is: expression

or: expression, expression list

Abbreviations: O.; GOS., GOSU.

See also: GOSUB, GOTO, ON...GOTO

## Purpose

The ON...GOSUB verb is used to execute one of a set of subroutines depending on the value of a control expression.

#### Use

When the ON...GOSUB verb is executed the expression between ON and GOSUB is evaluated and reduced to an integer. If the value of the integer is 1, the first subroutine in the list is executed as in a normal GOSUB. If the expression is 2, the second subroutine in the list is executed, and so forth. After the RETURN from the subroutine execution proceeds with the statement which follows the ON...GOSUB.

If the expression is zero, negative, or larger than the number of subroutines provided in the list, no subroutine is executed and execution proceeds with the next line of the program.

NOTE: Commas may not be used in the expressions following the GOSUB. The PC-1401/1402 cannot distinguish between commas in expressions and commas between expressions.

## **Examples**

10 INPUT A

20 ON A GOSUB 100, 200, 300

30 END

100 PRINT "FIRST"

110 RETURN

200 PRINT "SECOND"

210 RETURN

300 PRINT "THIRD"

310 RETURN

An input of 1 prints "FIRST"; 2 prints "SECOND"; 3 prints "THIRD". Any other input does not produce any print.

1 ON expression GOTO expression list

Where: expression list is: expression

or: expression, expression list

Abbreviations: O.; G., GO., GOT.

See also: GOSUB, GOTO, ON ... GOSUB

## **Purpose**

The ON...GOTO verb is used to transfer control to one of a set of locations depending on the value of a control expression.

#### Use

When the ON...GOTO verb is executed the expression between ON and GOTO is evaluated and reduced to an integer. If the value of the integer is 1, control is transferred to the first location in the list. If the expression is 2, control is transferred to the second location in the list; and so forth.

If the expression is zero, negative, or larger than the number of locations provided in the list, execution proceeds with the next line of the program.

NOTE: Commas may not be used in the expressions following the GOTO. The PC-1401/1402 cannot distinguish between commas in expressions and commas between expressions.

## Examples

10 INPUT A

20 ON A GOTO 100, 200, 300

30 GOTO 900

100 PRINT "FIRST"

110 GOTO 900

200 PRINT "SECOND"

210 GOTO 900

300 PRINT "THIRD"

310 GOTO 900

900 END

An input of 1 prints 'FIRST'; 2 prints 'SECOND'; 3 prints 'THIRD'. Any other input does not produce any print.

#### Verbs PAUSE

1 PAUSE print expr

2 PAUSE print expr , print expr

3 PAUSE print list

Where: print list is: print expr

or: print expr; print list

and: print expr is: expression

or: USING clause; expression

The USING clause is described separately under USING

Abbreviations: PAU., PAUS.

See also: LPRINT, PRINT, USING, and WAIT

## **Purpose**

The PAUSE verb is used to print information on the display for a short period.

#### Use

The PAUSE verb is used to display prompting information, results of calculations, etc. The operation of PAUSE is identical to PRINT except that after PAUSE the PC-1401/1402 waits for a short preset interval of about .85 seconds and then continues execution of the program without waiting for the ENTER key or the WAIT interval.

The first form of the PAUSE statement displays a single value. If the expression is numeric, the value is printed at the far right end of the display. If it is a string expression, the display is made starting at the far left.

With the second form of the PAUSE statement the display is divided into two 8 character halves. The two values are displayed in each half according to the same rules as above.

With the third form the display starts at the left edge and each value is displayed immediately following the previous value from left to right with no intervening space.

PAUSE statements are not affected by the PRINT = LPRINT statement (see PRINT).

While it is possible to write PAUSE statements which would display more than 16 characters only the left-most 16 appear in the display. There is no way to see the other characters.

## Examples

10 A = 10 : B = 20 : X\$ = "ABCDEF"

20 PAUSE A

30 PAUSE X\$

40 PAUSE A, B

50 PAUSE A; B; X\$

Display

10.

**ABCDEF** 

10.

20.

10.20. ABCDEF

#### Verbs PRINT

1 PRINT print expr

2 PRINT print expr, print expr

3 PRINT print list

4 PRINT = LPRINT

5 PRINT = PRINT

Where: print list is: print expr

or: print expr; print list

and: print expr is: expression

or: USING clause; expression

The USING clause is described separately under USING

Abbreviations: P., PR., PRI., PRIN.

See also: LPRINT, PAUSE, USING, and WAIT

## **Purpose**

The PRINT verb is used to print information on the display or on the printer of the CE-126P printer/Cassette Interface.

### Use

The PRINT verb is used to display prompting information, results of calculations, etc. The first form of the PRINT statement displays a single value. If the expression is numeric, the value is printed at the far right end of the display. If it is a string expression, the display is made starting at the far left.

With the second form of the PRINT statement the display is divided into two 8 character halves and the two values are displayed in each half according to the same rules as above.

With the third form the display starts at the left edge and each value is displayed immediately following the previous value from left to right with no intervening space.

The fourth and fifth forms of the PRINT statement do no printing. The fourth form causes all PRINT statements which follow it in the program to be treated as if they were LPRINT statements. The fifth form resets this condition so that the PRINT statements will again work with the display.

While it is possible to write PRINT statements which would display more than

#### Verbs PRINT

16 characters, only the left-most 16 appear in the display. There is no way to see the other characters.

## **Examples**

10 A = 10 : B = 20 : X\$ = "ABCDEF"	Display	
20 PRINT A		10.
30 PRINT X\$	ABCDEF	
40 PRINT A, B	10.	20.
50 PRINT A. R. YS	10.20.ABCDEF	

#### Verbs PRINT

1 PRINT # "var list"

2 PRINT # "filename"; var list

Where: var list is: variable

or: variable, var list

Abbreviations: P. #, PR. #, PRI. #, PRIN. #

See also: INPUT #, PRINT, READ

## Purpose

The PRINT # verb is used to store values on the cassette tape.

## Use and Examples

The following variable types can be used for variable names:

- (1) Fixed variables A, B, X, A(26), C\*, A(10)\*, etc.
- (2) Simple variables AA, B2, XY\$, etc.
- (3) Array variables B(\*), CD(\*), N\$(\*), etc.

#### 1) Saving fixed variable contents onto tape

The contents of fixed variables can be saved onto tape by specifying the desired variable names (separated by commas) in the PRINT# statement.

PRINT#"DATA 1"; A, B, X, Y

This statement saves contents of variables A, B, X, and Y into tape file named "DATA 1".

If you wish to save the contents of the specified fixed variable and all the subsequent fixed variables, subscript that variable name with an asterisk  $\star$ .

PRINT# "D-2"; D\*

This statement saves the contents of fixed variables D through Z (and of extended variables A(26) and beyond, if defined) into the tape file named "D-2".

PRINT# E, X\$, A(30)\* This statement saves the contents of the fixed variables E and X\$ and of the extended variables A(30) and all the remaining variables, onto the tape.

#### Note:

Subscripted fixed variable names A(1) through A(26) can be specified in the PRINT# statement in much the same way as A through Z (or A\$ through Z\$). However, if array A is already defined by the DIM statement, A() cannot be used to define subscripted fixed variables.

#### 2) Saving simple variable (two-character variable) contents

The contents of simple variables can be saved onto tape by specifying the desired variable names.

PRINT#"DM-1"; AB, Y1, XY\$

This statement saves the contents of the simple variables AB, Y1, and XY\$ into the tape file named 'DM-1'.

## 3) Saving array variable contents

The contents of all variables of a specific array can be saved onto tape by specifying the array name subscripted by an asterisk enclosed in parentheses (\*).

PRINT#"DS-2"; X(\*), Y\$(\*)

This statement saves the contents of all the elements  $(X(\emptyset), X(1), \ldots)$  of the array X, and of all the elements  $(Y\$(0), Y\$(1), \ldots)$  of the array Y\$, into the tape file name 'DS-2'.

#### Note:

It is not possible to save the contents of only one or more specific elements of an array.

While fixed variables or subscripted fixed variables allow you to save only specific parts of them, an array (such as A), defined by the DIM statement does not allow you to save only a specific part of it.

\* If the PRINT# statement is executed with no variable names specified, an error (ERROR 1) will result.

#### - CAUTION -

The locations for extended variables such as A(27) and beyond, simple variables, and/or array variables must be set aside in the program/data area before the PRINT# statement is executed. Otherwise, the execution of the PRINT# statement for undifined variables will result in an error.

#### Verbs RADIAN

#### 1 RADIAN

Abbreviations: RAD., RADI., RADIA.

See also: DEGREE and GRAD

## Purpose

The RADIAN verb is used to change the form of angular values to radian form.

#### Use

The **PC-1401/1402** has three forms for representing angular values — decimal degrees, radians, and gradient. These forms are used in specifying the arguments to the SIN, COS, and TAN functions and in returning the results from the ASN, ACS, and ATN functions.

The RADIAN function changes the form for all angular values to radian form until a DEGREE or GRAD verb is used. Radian form represents angles in terms of the length of the arc with respect to a radius, i.e.,  $360^{\circ}$  is 2 PI radians since the circumference of a circle is 2 PI times the radius.

## **Examples**

10 RADIAN

20 X = ASN 1

X now has a value of 1.570796327 or PI/2, the Arcsine of 1.

30 PRINT X

#### 1 RANDOM

Abbreviations: RA., RAN., RAND., RANDO.

## **Purpose**

The RANDOM verb is used to reset the seed for random number generation.

## Use

When random numbers are generated using the RND function, the **PC-1401/1402** begins with a predetermined "seed" or starting number. The RANDOM verb resets this seed to a new randomly determined value.

The starting seed will be the same each time the **PC-1401/1402** is turned on, so the sequence of random numbers generated with RND is the same each time, unless the seed is changed. This is very convenient during the development of a program because it means that the behavior of the program should be the same each time it is run even through it includes a RND function. When you want to have the numbers be truly random, the RANDOM statement can be used to make the seed itself random.

## Examples

10 RANDOM 20 X = RND 10 When run from line 20, the value of X is based on the standard seed. When run from line 10, a new seed is used.

#### Verbs READ

1 **READ** variable list

Where: variable list is: variable

or: variable, variable list

Abbreviations: REA.

See also: DATA, RESTORE

## **Purpose**

The READ verb is used to read values from a DATA statement and assign them to variables.

#### Use

When assigning initial values to an array, it is convenient to list the values in a DATA statement and use a READ statement in a FOR... NEXT loop to load the values into the array. When the first READ is executed, the first value in the first DATA statement is returned. Succeeding READs use succeeding values in the sequential order in which they appear in the program, regardless of how many values are listed in each DATA statement or how many DATA statements are used.

If desired, the values in a DATA statement can be read a second time by using the RESTORE statement.

## Examples

10 DIM B (10) Set up an array

2Ø WAIT 128

30 FOR I = 1 TO 10

40 READ B(I) Loads the values from the DATA statement into

50 PRINT B(I) B(I) --- B(I) is 10, B(2) is 20, B(3) is 30, etc.

60 NEXT I

7Ø DATA 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60

80 DATA 70, 80, 90, 100

90 END

1 REM remark

Abbreviations: none

## **Purpose**

The REM verb is used to include comments in a program.

### Use

Often it is useful to include explanatory comments in a program. These can provide titles, names of authors, dates of last modification, usage notes, reminders about algorithms used, etc. These comments are included by means of the REM statement.

The REM statement has no effect on the program execution and can be included anywhere in the program. Everything following the REM verb in that line is treated as a comment, so the REM verb must be the last statement in a line when multiple statement lines are used.

## **Examples**

10 REM THIS LINE HAS NO EFFECT

#### Verbs RESTORE

1 RESTORE

2 **RESTORE** expression

Abbreviations: RES., REST., RESTO., RESTOR.

See also: DATA, READ

## **Purpose**

The RESTORE verb is used to reread values in a DATA statement or to change the order in which these values are read.

## Use

In the regular use of the READ verb the **PC-1401/1402** begins reading with the first value in a DATA statement and proceeds sequentially through the remaining values. The first form of the RESTORE statement resets the pointer to the first value of the first DATA statement, so that it can be read again. The second form of the RESTORE statement resets the pointer to the first value of the first DATA statement whose line number is greater than the value of the expression.

## Examples

10 DIM B(10)

Sets up an array

20 FOR I = 1 TO 10

30 READ B(I)

Assigns the value 10 to each of the elements of B().

**40 RESTORE** 

50 NEXT I

60 DATA 10

#### 1 RETURN

Abbreviations: RE., RET., RETU., RETUR.

See also: GOSUB, ON ... GOSUB

## Purpose

The RETURN verb is used at the end of a subroutine to return control to the statement following the originating GOSUB.

## Use

A subroutine may have more than one RETURN statement, but the first one executed terminates the execution of the subroutine. The next statement executed will be the one following the GOSUB or ON . . . GOSUB which calls the subroutine. If a RETURN is executed without a GOSUB, an Error 5 will occur.

## Examples

10 GOSUB 100

20 END

100 PRINT "HELLO"

110 RETURN

When run this program prints the word "HELLO" one time.

#### Verbs STOP

#### 1 STOP

Abbreviations: S., ST., STO.,

See also: END; CONT command

## **Purpose**

The STOP verb is used to halt execution of a program for diagnostic purposes.

#### Use

When the STOP verb is encountered in program execution the **PC-1401/1402** execution halts and a message is displayed such as 'BREAK IN 200' where 200 is the number of the line containing the STOP. STOP is used during the development of a program to check the flow of the program or examine the state of variables. Execution may be restarted using the CONT command.

## Examples

10 STOP

Causes "BREAK IN 10" to appear in the display.

1 TROFF

Abbreviations: TROF.

See also: TRON

## **Purpose**

The TROFF verb is used to cancel the trace mode.

## Use

Execution of the TROFF verb restores normal execution of the program.

## **Examples**

10 TRON

20 FOR I = 1 TO 3

30 NEXTI

40 TROFF

When run, this program displays the line numbers 10, 20, 30, 30, 30 and 40.

#### Verbs TRON

#### 1 TRON

Abbreviations: TR., TRO.

See also: TROFF

## **Purpose**

The TRON verb is used to initiate the trace mode.

## Use

The trace mode provides assistance in debugging programs. When the trace mode is on, the line number of each statement is displayed after each statement is executed. The PC-1401/1402 then halts and waits for the Down Arrow key to be pressed before moving on to the next statement. The Up Arrow key may be pressed to see the statement which has just been executed. The trace mode continues until a TROFF verb is executed.

## Examples

10 TRON

20 FOR I = 1 TO 3

30 NEXT I

**40 TROFF** 

When run, this program displays the line numbers 10, 20, 30, 30, 30 and 40.

- 1 USING
- 2 USING "editing specification"
- 3 USING character variable

Abbreviations: U., US., USI., USIN.

See also: LPRINT, PAUSE, PRINT

Further guide to the use of USING is provided in Appendix C

## **Purpose**

The USING verb is used to control the format of displayed or printed output.

#### Use

The USING verb can be used by itself or as a clause within a LPRINT, PAUSE, or PRINT statement. The USING verb establishes a specified format for output which is used for all output which follows until changed by another USING verb.

The editing specification of the USING verb consists of a quoted string composed of some combination of the following editing characters:

- # Right justified numeric field character
- · Decimal point.
- Used to indicate that numbers should be displayed in scientific notation.
- & Left justified alphanumeric field.

For example, "####" is an editing specification for a right justified numeric field with room for 3 digits and the sign. In numeric fields, a location must be included for the sign, even if it will always be positive.

Editing specifications may include more than one field. For example "####&&&&" could be used to print a numeric and a character field next to each other.

If the editing specification is missing, as in format 1, special formatting is turned off and the built-in display rules pertain.

## Examples

10 A = 125 : X\$ = "ABCDEF"

Display

20 PRINT USING "##.## ^"; A

1. 25E Ø2

30 PRINT USING "&&&&&&&":X\$

ABCDEF

40 PRINT USING "####&&&": A: X\$

125 ABC

Notes: 1. When the total number of digits specified with USING exceeds 16 for "PRINT expression", ERROR 7 results.

- 2. When the number of digits for the integer part (sign and decimal point included) exceeds 8 while using the fixed decimal point system for "PRINT expression, expression", ERROR 7 results.
  When the character string of the expression in the form of "PRINT expression, expression" exceeds 8 columns, the excess part is not discovered.
  - expression, expression exceeds 8 columns, the excess part is not displayed.
- 3. When the display contents of the form "PRINT expression; expression" exceeds 16 columns, the excess part is not displayed.

1 WAIT

2 WAIT expression

Abbreviations: W., WA., WAI.

See also: PAUSE, PRINT

## **Purpose**

The WAIT verb is used to control the length of time that displayed information is shown before program execution continues.

## Use

In normal execution the PC-1401/1402 halts execution after a PRINT command until the ENTER key is pressed. The WAIT command causes the PC-1401/1402 to display for a specified interval and then proceed automatically (similar to the PAUSE verb). The expression which follows the WAIT verb determines the length of the interval. The interval may be set to any value from Ø to 65535. Each increment is about one fifty-nineth of a second. WAIT Ø is too fast to be read reasonably; WAIT 65535 is about 19 minutes. WAIT with no following expression resets the PC-1401/1402 to the original condition of waiting until the ENTER key is pressed.

#### Examples

10 WAIT 59

Causes PRINT to wait about 1 second.

## **FUNCTIONS**

## **Pseudovariables**

Pseudovariables are a group of functions which take no argument and are used like fixed variables wherever required.

1 INKEY\$		
L	 	 

INKEY\$ is a string pseudovariable which has the value of the last key pressed on the keyboard. 

ENTER, GCE, SHIFT, DEF, T, , , and all have a value of NUL. INKEY\$ is used to respond to the pressing of individual keys without waiting for the ENTER key to end the input.

10 A\$ = INKEY\$

20 B = ASC A\$

30 IF B = 0 THEN GOTO 10

40 IF B....

Lines 40 and beyond contain tests for the key and the actions to be taken. (For example: 40 PRINT A\$). On first executing the program, the value of INKEY\$ is NUL, since the last key pressed was **ENTER**. If INKEY\$ is used following PRINT or PAUSE, the contents of the display are read instead of a key press.

#### 1 MEM

MEM is a numeric pseudovariable which has the value of the number of characters of program memory remaining. The available program memory will be the total memory less the space consumed by programs and array variables. MEM may also be used as a command. Immediately following reset, MEM has a value of 3534 bytes PC-1401 and 9678 bytes in the PC-1402.

1 **PI** 

PI is a numeric pseudovariable which has the value of PI. It is identical to the use of the special PI character ( $\pi$ ) on the keyboard. Like other numbers the value of PI is kept to 10 digit accuracy (3.141592654).

## **Numeric Functions**

Numeric functions are a group of mathematical operations. Some take a single numeric value and return a numeric value. Some take two numeric values and return two numeric values. They include trigonometric functions, logarithmic functions, and functions which operate on the integer and sign parts of a number. Many dialects of BASIC require that the argument to a function be enclosed in parentheses. The PC-1401/1402 does not require these parentheses, except when it is necessary to indicate what part of a more complex expression is to be included in the argument. Numeric functions with two numeric values all require the parentheses.

LOG 100 + 100 will be interpreted as:

(LOG 100) + 100

not

LOG (100 + 100).

## 1 ABS numeric expression

ABS is numeric function which returns the absolute value of the numeric argument. The absolute value is the value of a number without regard to its sign. ABS -10 is 10.

### 1 ACS numeric expression

ACS is a numeric function which returns the arccosine of the numeric argument. The arccosine is the angle whose cosine is equal to the expression. The value returned depends on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree, radian, or gradient mode for angles. ACS .5 is 60 in the decimal degree mode.

#### 1 AHC numeric expression

AHC is a numeric function which returns arc-hyperbolic cosine of the numeric argument. AHC 5 is 2.29243167.

# Functions Numeric Functions

### 1 AHS numeric expression

AHS is a numeric function which returns arc-hyperbolic sine of the numeric argument. AHS 6 is 2.491779853.

## 1 AHT numeric expression

AHT is a numeric function which returns arc-hyperbolic tangent of the numeric argument.

## 1 ASN numeric expression

ASN is a numeric function which returns the arcsine of the numeric argument. The arcsine is the angle whose sign is equal to the expression. The value returned depends on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree, radian, or gradient mode for angles. ASN .5 is 30 in the decimal degree mode.

## 1 ATN numeric expression

ATN is a numeric function which returns the arctangent of the numeric argument. The arctangent is the angle whose tangent is equal to the expression. The value returned depends on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree, radian, or gradient mode for angles. ATN 1. is 45 in the decimal degree mode.

## 1 COS numeric expression

COS is a numeric function which returns the cosine of the angle argument. The value returned depends on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree, radian, or gradient mode for angles. COS 60 is .5 in the decimal degree mode.

### 1 CUR numeric expression

CUR is a numeric function which returns the cubic root of its argument. CUR 8 is 2.

## 1 DEG numeric expression

The DEG function converts an angle argument in DMS (Degree, Minute, Second) format to DEG (Decimal Degree) form. In DMS format the integer portion of the number represents the degree, the first and second digits of the decimal represent the minutes, the third and forth digits of the decimal represent the seconds, and any further digits represent decimal seconds. For example, 55° 10′ 44.5″ is represented as 55.10/445. In DEG format the integer portion is degrees and the decimal portion is decimal degrees. DEG 55.10/445 is 55.1790/2778.

## 1 DMS numeric expression

DMS is a numeric function which converts an angle argument in DEG format to DMS format (see DEG). DMS 55.17902778 is 55.10445.

## 1 EXP <u>numeric expression</u>

EXP is a numeric function which returns the value of e (2.718281828 – the base of the natural logarithms) raised to the value of the numeric argument. EXP 1 is 2.718281828. (Press the E X P 1 ENTER.)

#### Functions Numeric Functions

### 1 FACT numeric expression

FACT is a numeric function which returns the factorial of its argument. FACT 5 is 120.

## 1 HCS numeric expression

HCS is a numeric function which returns hyperbolic cosine of the numeric argument. HCS 5 is 74 20994852.

## 1 HSN numeric expression

HSN is a numeric function which returns hyperbolic sine of the numeric argument. HSN 4 is 27.2899172.

## 1 HTN numeric expression

HTN is a numeric function which returns hyperbolic tangent of the numeric argument. HTN 1 is 0.761594156.

## 1 INT numeric expression

INT is a numeric function which returns the integer part of its numeric argument. INT PI is 3.

## 1 LN numeric expression

LN is a numeric function which returns the logarithm to the base e (2.718281828) of its numeric argument. LN 100 is 4.605170186.

## 1 LOG numeric expression

LOG is a numeric function which returns the logarithm to the base 10 of its numeric argument. LOG 100 is 2.

## 1 POL (numeric expression, numeric expression)

POL is a numeric function which converts numeric arguments in rectangular coordinates format to polar coordinate format.

The first numeric argument indicates the distance from the y-axis and the second numeric argument indicates the distance from the x-axis. The values converted, the distance and the angle in the polar coordinates, are assigned to the fixed variables Y and Z respectively. The angle converted depend on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree, radian, or gradient mode for angles. POL (3, 4) is (5, 53.13010235) in decimal degree.

## 1 RCP numeric expression

RCP is a numeric function which returns the reciprocal of its numeric argument. RCP 5 is 0.2.

## Functions Numeric Functions

## 1 REC (numeric expression, numeric expression)

REC is a numeric function which converts numeric arguments in polar coordinates format to rectangular coordinates format.

The first numeric argument indicates the distance and second numeric argument indicates the angle which depende on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree radian, or gradient mode for angles. The values converted, the distances from the y-axis and the x-axis, are assigned into the fixed variables Y and Z respectively. REC (7, 50) in (4.499513268, 5.362311102) in decimal degree.

#### 1 RND numeric expression

RND is a numeric function which generates random numbers. If the value of the argument is less than one but greater than or equal to zero, the random number is less than one and greater than or equal to zero. If the argument is an integer greater than or equal to 1, the result is a random number greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to the argument. If the argument is greater than or equal to 1 and not an integer, the result is a random number greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to the smallest integer which is larger than the argument: (In this case, the generation of the random number changes depending on the value of the decimal portion of the argument.):

n . . . . . . . . .

	Result		
Argument	Lower Bound	Upper Bound	
.5	Ø	<1	
2	1	2	
2.5	1	3	

The same sequence of random numbers is normally generated because the same "seed" is used each time the PC-1401/1402 is turned on. To randomize the seed, see the RANDOM yerb.

## 1 numeric expression ROT numeric expression

ROT is a numeric function which returns the power root of its argument. 125 ROT 3 is 5.

(i.e.:  $\sqrt[3]{125}$  should be entered as 125 ROT 3.)

#### 1 SGN numeric expression

SGN is a numeric function which returns a value based on the sign of the argument. If the argument is positive, the result is 1; if the argument is zero, the result is  $\emptyset$ ; if the argument is negative, the result is -1. SGN -5 is -1.

#### 1 SIN numeric expression

SIN is a numeric function which returns the sine of the angle argument. The value returned depends on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree, radian, or gradient mode for angles. SIN 30 is .5.

## 1 SQR numeric expression

SQR is a numeric function which returns the square root of its agrument. It is identical to the use of the special square root symbol ( $\sqrt{\phantom{a}}$ ) on the keyboard. SQR 4 is 2.

## 1 SQU numeric expression

SQU is a numeric function which returns the square of its numeric argument. SQU 3 is 9.

#### Functions Numeric Functions

#### 1 TAN numeric expression

TAN is a numeric function which returns the tangent of its angle argument. The value returned depends on whether the **PC-1401/1402** is in decimal degree, radian, or gradient mode for angles. TAN 45 is 1 in decimal degree.

## 1 TEN numeric expression

TEN is a numeric function which returns the value of 10 (the base of the common logarithms) raised to the value of its numeric argument.

TEN 3 is 1000.

## **String Functions**

String functions are a group of operations used for manipulating strings. Some take a string argument and return a numeric value. Some take a string argument and return a string. Some take a numeric value and return a string. Some take a string argument and one or two numeric arguments and return a string. Many dialects of BASIC require the argument of a function to be enclosed in parentheses. The PC-1401/1402 does not require these parentheses, except when it is necessary to indicate what part of a more complex expression is to be included in the argument. String functions with two or three arguments all require the parentheses.

## 1 ASC string expression

ASC is a string function which returns the numeric ASCII code value of the first character in its argument. The chart of ASCII codes and their relationship to characters is given in Appendix B. ASC "A" is 65.

## 1 CHR\$ numeric expression

CHR\$ is a string function which returns the character which corresponds to the numeric ASCII code of its argument. The chart of ASCII codes and their relationship to characters is given in Appendix B. CHR\$ 65 is "A".

## 1 LEFT\$ (string expression, numeric expression)

LEFT\$ is a string function which returns the leftmost part of the string first argument. The number of characters returned is determined by the numeric expression. LEFT\$ ("ABCDEF", 2) is "AB".

## 1 LEN string expression

LEN is a string function which returns the length of the string argument. LEN "ABCDEF" is 6.

## Functions String Functions

## 1 MID\$ (string expression, num. exp. 1, num. exp. 2)

MID\$ is a string function which returns a middle portion of the string first argument. The first numeric argument indicates the first character position to be included in the result. The second numeric argument indicates the number of characters that are to be included. MID\$ ("ABCDEF", 2, 3) is "BCD".

### 1 RIGHT\$ (string expression, numeric expression)

RIGHT\$ is a string function which returns the rightmost part of the string first argument. The number of characters returned is determined by the numeric argument. RIGHT\$ ("ABCDEF", 3) is "DEF".

### 1 STR\$ numeric expression

STR\$ is a string function which returns a string which is the character representation of its numeric argument. It is the reverse of VAL. STR\$ 1.59 is '1.59'.

#### 1 VAL string expression

VAL is a string function which returns the numeric value of its string argument. It is the reverse of STR\$. The VAL of a non-number is zero. VAL "1.59" is 1.59.

Note: The character-string convertible by VAL function to a numerical value consists of numerals (0 to 9), symbols (+ and -) and a symbol (E) indicating an exponential portion. No other characters and symbols are included. If a character-string includes other characters and symbols, any character-string on the right of that character-string will be ignored. If included in a character-string, a space is usually regarded as non-existing.

# CHAPTER 9 TROUBLESHOOTING

This chapter provides you with some hints on what to do when your **SHARP PC-1401/1402** does not do what you expect it to do. It is divided into two parts — the first part deals with general machine operation and the second with BASIC programming. For each problem there are a series of suggestions provided. You should try each of these, one at a time, until you have fixed the problem.

## **Machine Operation**

If:	Then You Should:
You turn on the machine but there is nothing on the display	<ol> <li>Check to see that the power switch is set to ON position.</li> <li>Press the ON Replace the batteries.</li> </ol>
There is a display, but no response to keystrokes	<ol> <li>Press CEE key to clear.</li> <li>Press CA (SHIFT CCE) to clear.</li> <li>Turn OFF and ON again.</li> <li>Hold down any key and push RESET.</li> <li>Push RESET without any key.</li> </ol>
You have typed in a calculation or answer and get no response	<ol> <li>In RUN mode press ENTER or in CAL mode press = .</li> </ol>
You are running a BASIC program and it displays something, and stops	1. Press ENTER.
You enter a calculation and it is displayed in BASIC statement format (colon after the first number)	Change from the PROgram into the RUN mode for calculations.
You get no response from any keys.	1. Hold down any key and push RESET.
	2. If you get no response from any key even when the above operation is performed, push the RESET without pushing any key. This will clear the program and data.

## **BASIC Debugging**

When entering a new BASIC program, it is usual for it **not** to work the first time. Even if you are simply keying in a program that you know is correct, such as those provided in this manual, it is usual to make at least one typing error. If it is a new program of any length, it will probably contain at least one logic error as well. Following are some general hints on how to find and correct your errors.

You run your program and get an error message:

- 1. Go back to the PROgram mode and use the <u>f</u> or the <u>line</u> keys to recall the line with the error. The cursor will be positioned at the place in the line where the PC-1401/1402 got confused.
- 2. If you can't find an obvious error in the way in which the line is written, the problem may lie with the values which are being used. For example, CHR\$ (A) will produce an error if A has a value of 1 because CHR\$ (1) is an illegal character. Check the values of the variables in either the RUN or the PROgram mode by typing in the name of the variable followed by ENTER.

You RUN the program and don't get an error message, but it doesn't do what you expect.

- 3. Check through the program line by line using LIST and the and keys to see if you have entered the program correctly. It is surprising how many errors can be fixed by just taking another look at the program.
- 4. Think about each line as you go through the program as if you were the computer. Take sample values and try to apply the operation in each line to see if you get the result that you expected.
- 5. Insert one or more extra PRINT statements in your program to display key values and key locations. Use these to isolate the parts of the program that are working correctly and the location of the error. This approach is also useful for determining which parts of a program have been executed. You can also use STOP to temporarily halt execution at critical points so that several variables can be examined.
- 6. Use TRON and TROFF, either as commands or directly within the program to trace the flow of the program through individual lines. Stop to examine the contents of critical variables at crucial points. This is a very slow way to find a problem, but sometimes it is also the only way.

# CHAPTER 10 MAINTENANCE OF THE PC-1401/1402

To insure trouble-free operation of your SHARP PC-1401/1402 we recommend the following:

- \* Always handle the pocket computer carefully as the liquid crystal display is made of glass.
- \* Keep the computer in an area free from extreme temperature changes, moisture, or dust. During warm weather, vehicles left in direct sunlight are subject to high temperature build up. Prolonged exposure to high temperature may cause damage to your computer.
- \* Use only a soft, dry cloth to clean the computer. Do not use solvents, water, or wet cloths.
- \* To avoid battery leakage, remove the batteries when the computer will not be in use for an extended period of time.
- \* If service should be required on this equipment, use only a SHARP servicing dealer, a SHARP approved service facility or SHARP repair service where available.
- \* If the computer is subjected to strong static electricity or external noise it may "hang up" (all keys become inoperative). If this occurs, press the ALL RESET button while holding down any key. (See Troubleshooting).
- \* Keep this manual for further reference.

# APPENDIX A ERROR MESSAGES

There are nine different error codes built into the **PC-1401/1402**. The following table will explain these codes.

Error	
Number	Meaning

Syntax error.

 This means that the PC-1401/1402 can't understand what you have entered. Check for things such as semicolons on the ends of PRINT statements, misspelled words, and incorrect usages.

3 \* / 2

2 Calculation error.

Here you have probably done one of three things:

Tried to use too large a number.
 Calculation results are greater than 9.999999999 99.

2. Tried to divide by zero.

5/Ø

3. An illogical calculation has been attempted.

LN - 30 or ASN 1.5

- 3 DIMension error/Augument error.
  - Array variable already exists.

Array specified without first dimensioning it.

Array subscript exceeds size of array specified in DIM statement.

DIM B (256)

 Illegal function argument. This means that you have tried to make the computer do something that it just can't handle.

The interval that is greater than 65535.

WAIT 66000

### 4 Line Number error.

Here you have probably done one of two things:

- Tried to use an unexsisting line number by the GOTO, GOSUB, RUN, LIST or THEN etc.
- Tried to use too large a line number. The maximum line number is 65279.

### 5 Nesting error.

Subroutine nesting exceeds 10 levels.

FOR loop nesting exceeds 5 levels.

RETURN verb without a GOSUB, NEXT verb without a FOR, or READ verb without a DATA.

Buffer space exceeded.

### 6 Memory Overflow.

Generally this error happens when you've tried to DIMension an array that is too big for memory. This can also happen when a program becomes too large.

### 7 PRINT USING error.

This means that you have put an illegal format specifier into a USING statement.

### 8 I/O device error.

This error can happen only when you have the optional printer and/or cassette recorder connected to the PC-1401/1402. It means that there is a problem with communication between the I/O device and the PC-1401/1402.

### 9 Other errors.

This code will be displayed whenever the computer has a problem that isn't covered by one of the other eight error codes. One of the most common causes for this error is trying to access data in a variable is one fashion (e.g. A\$) while the data was originally stored in the variable in another fashion (e.g. A).

# APPENDIX B ASCII CHARACTER CODE CHART

The following chart shows the conversion values for use with CHR\$ and ASC. The column shows the first hex character or the first four binary bits, the row shows the second hex character or the second binary bits. The upper left corner of each box contains the decimal number for the character. The lower right shows the character. If no character is shown then it is an illegal character on the PC-1401/1402.

For examples, the character "A" is a decimal 65 or a hex 41 or binary  $\emptyset1000001$ . The character " $\sqrt{\phantom{0}}$ " is a decimal 252 or a hex FC or a binary 11111100.

Note: When using either the CE-125 or CE-126P optional printer, be aware that the 39 (&27), 91 (&5B), and 93 (&5D) character codes for the PC-1401/1402 (displayed characters) and printer (printed characters) are different characters.

First 4 bits

PC-1401/1402 does not recognize codes in shaded area. If you enter the code number in the shaded area, an error will result.

resuit.											
Hex	Ø	1	2	3 _	4	5	6	7	8	E	F
Binary	0000	ØØØ1	ØØ1Ø	ØØ11	Ø1ØØ	Ø1Ø1	Ø11Ø	Ø111	1000	1110	1111
Ø	ø	to C	32	48	64	80	90	197	729	924	240
0000	NUL	排作	SPACE	Ø	@	Р	7.40	1.00		推 电电	1,000
1		17	33	49	65	81	97	113	129	225	241
0001			!	1	Α	Ω		1.1			1.00
2	2	18	34	50	66	82	98	Design	(J.)	1728	242
ØØ1Ø				2	В	R	V Victoria	h his	16		1.5
3	3	10 117	35	51	67	83	99	116	aai 🗇	207	243
ØØ11	/ <b>##/</b> II		#	3	С	S				4.0	1 6 6
4	4	20	36	52	68	84	100	116	132	228	244
Ø100			\$	4	Ď	Т		365	The second	HALL N	
5	5	21	37	53	69	85	101	117	133	229	246
Ø1Ø1		a GT	%	5	E	U	424	h#			
6	07.2	22:1	38	54	70)	86	102	10	134	230	246
Ø11Ø	26		&	6	F	V		144	A CONTRACTOR	COSTA Laborator	
7	7	23	39 ,	55	71	87	103	119	135	231	247
Ø111				7	G	W	100	1,44			
8	8	24	40	56	72	88		12	100	232	248
1000	507.0		(	8	H	X					
9	gnuitt	35 / 4654 /	41	57	73	89	105	121	137	200	749
1001	hilli		)	9		Y					134
A	10	26	42 *	58	74	90	106	122	138	234 Er (27)	250 4 1 1 1 1
1010		Land Com		:	J	Z					
B 1011	ari te munici	1 27 T	43 +	59	75 K	91	107 202	1723	100	236	251 π
1011	e subs	# 1 14 History		;				お 10 Miles 1 January	R.		
C 1100	17	28 10 60	44	60 <	76 L	92 ¥				238	252
	de No	1 A A S	,								V
D 1101	124 (	<b>199</b> Tel	45	61	77 M	93		125			253
	g*	de K								728	354
1110	14		46	62 >	78 N	94	110	126	170		
F	10.7		43		79	-		1			1000 PM
1111		31	47	63	/9 O	95 _			143	130 1 100 1	
	on set	de morne	<b>4</b> '	1 '	1	1		K I WAS SAN			e spanis

### APPENDIX C FORMATTING OUTPUT

It is sometimes important or useful to control the format as well the content of output. The **PC-1401/1402** controls display formats with the USING verb. This verb allows you to specify:

- \* The number of digits
- \* The location of the decimal point
- \* Scientific notation format
- \* The number of string characters

These different formats are specified with an "output mask". This mask may be a string constant or a string variable:

10: USING "####" 20: M\$ = "&&&&&

3Ø: USING M\$

When the USING verb is used with no mask, all special formatting is cancelled.

40: USING

A USING verb may also be used within a PRINT statement:

50: PRINT USING M\$; N

Wherever a USING verb is used, it will control the format of all output until a new USING verb is encountered.

### **Numeric Masks**

A numeric USING mask may only be used to display numeric values, i.e., numeric constants or numeric variables. If a string constant or variable is displayed while a numeric USING mask is in effect, the mask will be ignored. A value which is to be displayed must always fit within the space provided by the mask. The mask must reserve space for the sign character, even when the number will always be positive. Thus a mask which shows four display positions may only be used to display numbers with three digits.

### **Specifying Number of Digits**

The desired number of digits is specified using the '#' character. Each '#' in the mask reserves space for one digit. The display or print always contains as many characters as are designated in the mask. The number appears to the far right of this field; the remaining positions to the left are filled with spaces. Positive numbers therefore always have at least one space at the left of the field. Since the PC-1401/1402 maintains a maximum of 10 significant digits, no more than 11 '#' characters should be used in a numeric mask.

When the total number of columns of the integer part specified exceed 11, this integer part is regarded as 11 digits in the PC-1401/1402.

NOTE: In all examples in this appendix the beginning and end of the displayed field will be marked with a 'l' character to show the size of the field.

Statement	Display			
1Ø: USING "####"	(Set the PC-1401/1402 to the RUN mode, type RUN, and press ENTER).)			
2Ø: PRINT 25	2 5			
30: PRINT -350	-350			
40: PRINT 1000	ERROR 7 IN 40			

Notice that the last statement produced an error because 5 positions (4 digits and a sign space) were required, but only 4 were provided in the mask.

### **Specifying a Decimal Point**

A decimal point character, '.', may be included in a numeric mask to indicate the desired location of the decimal point. If the mask provides more significant decimal digits than are required for the value to be displayed, the remaining positions to the right will be filled with zeros. If there are more significant decimal digits in the value than in the mask, the extra digits will be truncated (not rounded):

Statement	Display
10: USING "####.##"	
2Ø: PRINT 25	25.00
3Ø: PRINT -35Ø.5	<b>-350.50</b>
40: PRINT 2.547	2.54

### **Specifying Scientific Notation**

A " $^{\prime\prime}$ " character may be included in the mask to indicate that the number is to be displayed in scientific notation. The '#' and '.' characters are used in the mask to specify the format of the "characteristic" portion of the number, i.e., the part which is displayed to the left of the E. Two '#' characters should always be used to the left of the decimal point to provide for the sign character and one integer digit. The decimal point may be included, but is not required. Up to 9 '#' characters may appear to the right of the decimal point. Following the characteristic portion, the exponentiation character, E, will be displayed followed by one position for the sign and two positions for the exponent. Thus, the smallest scientific notation field would be provided by a mask of "## $^{^{\prime\prime}}$ " which would print numbers of the form '2E 99'. The largest scientific notation field would be "##.####### $^{^{\prime\prime}}$ " which would print numbers such as ' $^{^{\prime\prime}}$ 1.234567890 E  $^{^{\prime\prime}}$ 1.23':

Statement	Display		
1Ø: USING "###.##^"			
20: PRINT 2	2.00E00		
3Ø: PRINT –365.278	-3.65E Ø2		

### Specifying Alphanumeric Masks

String constants and variables are displayed using the '&' character. Each '&' indicates one character in the field to be displayed. The string will be positioned at the left end of this field. If the string is shorter than the field, the remaining spaces to the right will be filled with spaces. If the string is longer than the field, the string will be truncated to the length of the field:

Statement	Display
1Ø: USING "&&&&&	
2Ø: PRINT "ABC"	ABC
3Ø: PRINT "ABCDEFGHI"	ABCDEF

### Mixed Masks

In most applications a USING mask will contain either all numeric or all string formatting characters. Both may be included in one USING mask, however, for certain purposes. In such cases, each switch from numeric to string formatting characters or vice versa marks the boundary for a different value. Thus, a mask of "#####&&&&" is a specification for displaying two separate values — a numeric value which is allocated 5 positions and a string value which is allocated 4 positions:

Statement	Display
10: PRINT USING "###.##&&"; 25; "CR"	25.00CR
20: PRINT -5.789; "DB"	-5.78DB

Remember: Once specified, a USING format is used for all output which follows until cancelled or changed by another USING verb.

### Precaution for USING verb

When display format is designated with USING, please note the followings.

1. When the total number of columns exceed 16 with a USING format in the PRINT expression, ERROR 7 results.

Example: 10: USING "###############"

17 columns or more

20: PRINT A

Note: When the total number of columns specified in the integer part exceed 11 including sign digit, the excess part is ignored. Also when the total number of columns of the integer part specified exceed 11, this integer part is regarded as 11 digits in the **PC-1401/1402**.

#### Examples:

1) 10: USING "##############"."
This format does not cause the error.

2) 10: USING "###############"

This format does not also cause the error.
Integer part: 11 digits, Decimal point: 1 digit and Decimal part: 4 digits

Total: 16 digits (less than 17 digits)

- 3) 10: USING "###############". ####"

  This format cause the error 7.

  (Total digits are greater than 16 digits.)
- Change the USING format to within 16 columns.
- 2. When the integer part exceeds 8 columns with a USING format in the PRINT expression, expression, ERROR 7 results.

Example: 10: USING "#########"

9 columns or more

20: PRINT A, B

- Change the USING format to within 8 columns.
- 3. When the display contents of the form PRINT <u>expression</u>; <u>expression</u>; <u>expression</u>; <u>expression</u>; <u>expression</u>; . . . .
- Displaying the value converted to hexadecimal notation when floating decimal system (exponential display) is designated with the USING statement, will result in error.

(ERROR 7, format error)

# APPENDIX D EXPRESSION EVALUATION AND OPERATOR PRIORITY

When the SHARP PC-1401/1402 is given a complex expression, it evaluates the parts of the expression in a sequence which is determined by the priority of the individual parts of the expression. If you enter the expression:

as either a calculation or as a part of a program, the **PC-1401/1402** does not know if you meant:

$$\frac{100}{5+45} = 2$$
 or  $\frac{100}{5} + 45 = 65$ 

Since the PC-1401/1402 must have some way to decide between these options, it uses its rules of operator priority. Because division has a higher "priority" than addition (see below), it will choose to do the division first and then the addition, i.e., it will choose the second option and return a value of 65 for the expression.

### **Operator Priority**

Operators on BASIC mode of the SHARP PC-1401/1402 are evaluated with the following priorities from highest to lowest:

Level	Operations
1.	Parentheses
2.	Variables and Pseudovariables
3.	Functions
4.	Exponentiation ( $\wedge$ ), (ROT)
5.	Unary minus, negative sign (—)
6.	Multiplication and division (*, /)
7.	Addition and substraction (+, -)
8.	Relational operators $(<, <=, =, <>, >=, >)$
9.	Logical operators (AND, OR)

When there are two or more operators at the same priority level the expression will be evaluated from left to right. (The exponentiation will be evaluated from right to left). Note that with A+B-C, for example, the answer is the same whether the addition or the subtraction is done first.

When an expression contains multiple nested parentheses, the innermost set is evaluated first and evaluation then proceeds outward.

#### APPENDIX D Expression Evaluation

For level 3 and 4, the last entry has a higher priority.

For example: 
$$-2 \wedge 4 \rightarrow -(2^4)$$
  
  $3 \wedge -2 \rightarrow 3^{-2}$ 

### **Sample Evaluation**

Starting with the expression:

The PC-1401/1402 would first evaluate the innermost set of parentheses. Since '+' and '-' are at the same level it would move from left to right and would do the addition first:

$$((8-2)*6+2) / 10^{\circ} LOG 100$$

Then it would do subtraction:

or:

In the next set of parentheses it would do the multiplication first:

And then the addition:

or:

Now that the parentheses are cleared, the LOG function has the highest priority so it is done next:

The exponentiation is done next:

And last of all the division is performed:

This is the value of the expression.

# APPENDIX E KEY FUNCTIONS IN BASIC MODE



(ON)

Use to turn the PC-1401/1402 power on when the auto power off function is in effect.

(BREAK)

- Depression this key during program execution functions as a BREAK ( RRK ) key and causes to interrupt the program execution.
- When pushed during manual execution, input/output command such as BEEP, CLOAD, etc., execution of the command is interrupted.

SHIFT

- The yellow key marked "SHIFT" must be used to designate a second function. (The material appearing in brown above each kev.
  - Ex. SHIFT ?  $\rightarrow$ ? is inputted.

C-CE

 Use to clear the contents of the entry and the display. (Error release)

SHIFT CA

- Not only clears the display contents, but resets the computer to its initial state.
  - Initial state -
  - · Resets the WAIT timer.
  - Resets the display format. (USING format)
  - Resets the TRON state (TROFF).
  - Resets the PRINT = LPRINT.
  - Resets error.

0 ~ 9

Numeric keys.

•

- Decimal point.
- Use to enter an abbreviation of a command/verb/function.
- Use to designate the decimal portion in USING format desiqnation.

E

• Use to designate an exponent in scientific notation. (This key is a letter E key)

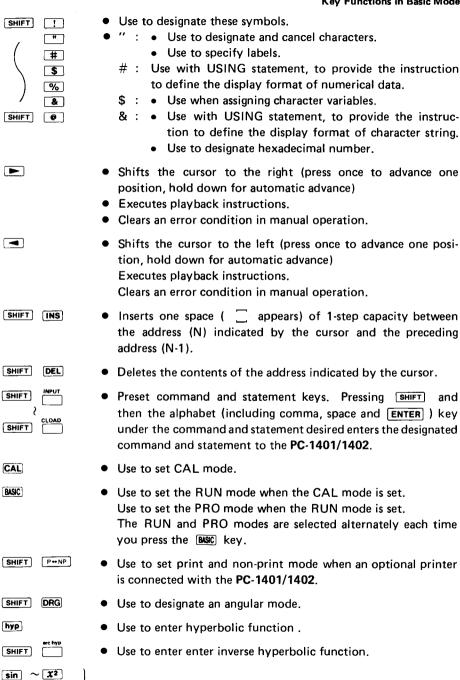
EXP

• Use to designate an exponent in scientific notation.

Division key.

# APPENDIX E Key Functions in Basic Mode

*	<ul> <li>Multiplication key.</li> </ul>
+	<ul> <li>Use to designate an array variable in the INPUT#, the PRINT#, etc.</li> <li>Addition key.</li> </ul>
_	Subtraction key.
SHIFT ?	<ul> <li>Use to enter CLOAD?.</li> </ul>
SHIFT :	<ul> <li>Use to divide two or more statements in one line.</li> </ul>
,	<ul> <li>Use to provide pause between two equations, and between variables or comments.</li> </ul>
SHIFT ;	<ul> <li>Use to provide multi-display (two or more values/contents/displayed at a time.</li> <li>Use to provide pause between the instruction and the variable.</li> </ul>
Ξ	<ul> <li>In assignment statements, use to assign the contents (number or character) on the right for the variable specified on the left.</li> <li>Use when inputting logical operators in IF sentence.</li> </ul>
DEF	<ul> <li>When any one of eighteen keys (A, S, D, F, G, H, I, K, L, Z, X, C, V, B, N, M, *, SPaCe) is pushed after the depression of the DEF key, it starts to execute the program from the program line that has the same label as the key code depressed.</li> </ul>
<b>A</b> ∼ <b>Z</b>	<ul> <li>Alphabet keys. You are probably familiar with these keys from the standard typewriter keyboard. On the PC-1401/ 1402 display the characters appear in the upper case.</li> </ul>
(, )	Use to input parentheses.
SHIFT <	Use when inputting logical operators in IF sentence.
SPC	• Use to provide space when inputting programs or characters.
SHIFT	<ul> <li>Use for power calculation instructions.</li> <li>Use to specify the floating decimal point system (exponent display) for numerical data in USING statement instructions.</li> </ul>
SHIFT T	• Use to designate pi $(\pi)$ .
	Use to designate square root.



SHIFT

SHIFT

sin<sup>-1</sup>

n!

### APPENDIX E Key Functions in Basic Mode



- Enters a program line into the computer.
- Use when writing in programs.
- Requests manual calculation or direct execution of a command statements by the computer.
- Enters a restart instruction after inputting data required by an INPUT statement or after executing a PRINT statements.

The and keys have the following functions, depending on designated modes, as well as the state of the computer.

Mode	State	•	1	
RUN	Program being executed			
	Program is temporarily interrupted	To execute the next line	To display program line being executed or already executed, hold this key down.	
	INPUT statement being executed			
	PRINT statement just now executed			
	Under break			
	Error condition during executing program		To display error- producing line, hold this key down.	
	TRON condition	To execute debugging operation	To display program line being executed or already executed. hold this key down.	
	Other condition	To display an answer just previously calculated. (Last answer function)	Same as left	
	hen the mode is changed front being displayed)	om RUN to PRO and pro	gram line	
PRO	Program is temporarily interrupted	To display the line interrupted	Same as left.	
PRO	Error condition	To display the line with error	Same as left	
	Other condition	To display the first line	To display the last line	
(w	hen the program line is bei	ng display)		
		To display the next program line	To display the preceeding program line	

Note: The following keys can not be used in the BASIC mode (RUN or PRO mode).

F=E , SHIFT TAB ,  $\updownarrow$  , SHIFT STAT , SHIFT  $\Delta\%$  , x=M , RM , M $\dotplus$  ,  $\uparrow$ -, and keys used to obtain the statistics (i.e. n, $\tilde{x}$ , etc.)

# APPENDIX F SPECIFICATIONS

Model: PC-1401/1402 Pocket Computer

Processor: 8 bit CMOS CPU

Programming Language:

Memory Capacity: System ROM: 40 K Bytes

RAM:

BASIC

System About 500 Bytes

User

Fixed Memory Area 208 Bytes

 $(A \sim Z, A\$ \sim Z\$)$ 

Program/Data Area PC-1401 3534 Bytes

PC-1402 9678 Bytes

Stack: Sub-routine: 10 stacks Function: 16 stacks

FOR-NEXT: 5 stacks Data: 8 stacks

Operators: Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, trigono-

metric and inverse trigonometric functions, logarithmic and exponential functions, angle conversion, square and square root, cubic root, hyperbolic and inverse hyperbolic functions, coordinate conversion, power root, sign, absolute, integer, relational operators, logical

operators, etc.

Numeric Precision: 10 digits (mantissa) + 2 digits (exponent).

Editing Features: Cursor left and right, line up and down, character insert,

character delete.

Memory Protection: CMOS Battery backup.

Display: 16 character liquid crystal display with 5 x 7 dot charac-

ters.

Keys: 76 keys: Alphabetic, numeric, special symbols, and

functions. Numeric pad. User defined keys.

Power Supply: 6.0V DC: Lithium cells.

Type: CR-2032 x 2

Power Consumption: 6.0 V DC @ 0.03W

Approx. 300 hours when 55555555. is on continuous display at an operating temperature of 20°C, this time may very slightly with the operation method, etc.

 One hour operation per day allows the battery to be used for approx. 4 months. This is true for one hour operation consisting of 10 minutes of calculations or program executions and 50 minutes of displays.

### APPENDIX F Specifications

 $170(W) \times 72(D) \times 9.5(H)$  mm. Dimensions:

6-11/16"(W) x 2-27/32(D) x 3/8"(H)

Weight: Approximately (with cells and hard cover) 150g (0.33 lbs.) Accessories:

Hard cover, two lithium cells (built-in), keyboard-

template and instruction manual.

Printer/Cassette Interface (CE-126P) Options:

## APPENDIX G FEATURE COMPARISON OF THE PC-1211, PC-1245, PC-1251, PC-1401, PC-1402 AND PC-1500

The four **SHARP** pocket computers, the **PC-1211**, the **PC-1245**, the **PC-1401**/1402, the **PC-1251**, and the **PC-1500** have many features in common, but are some significant differences. Sometimes the same features are present, yet act in a slightly different fashion. In order to facilitate the use of programs on different models the following comparison charts are provided.

### **Verbs and Commands**

In the following chart the symbol:

- M indicates that the feature can only be used in manual execution, i.e., as a command:
- P indicates that the feature can only be used within a program;
- B indicates that the feature can be used in both contexts.

When no symbol is shown, the feature is not available on that machine

PC-1211	PC-1245 PC-1251 PC-1401 PC-1402	PC-1500	Comments
Р	Р	P	See Note 1
		P	
Р	В	В	PC-1500 has tone and duration
Р	*	P	* PC-1245/1251 have
В	В,	В	this verb.
М	M	М	
М	M	M	
		В	
		В	
М	М	M	
M	В	В	
		В	
		В	
В	В	В	
	P	P	
	P P B M M	PC-1251 PC-1401 PC-1402 P P B P B B M M M M M M B B B B B B B B	PC-1211 PC-1401 PC-1500 P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P

### Verbs and Commands (continued)

		PC-1245 PC-1251 PC-1401		
	PC-1211	PC-1402	PC-1500	Comments
DEBUG	М			
DIM		В	В	
END	Р	P	P	
FOR TO STEP	P	P	Р	
GOSUB	P	P	P	
GOTO	P	В	В	
GCURSOR			В	
GPRINT			В	
GRAD	В	В	В	
GRAPH			В	
IF THEN	P	P	P	
INPUT	P	P	P	
INPUT #	В	В	В	
LET	P	P	P	
LF			В	
LINE			В	
LIST	M	М	M	
LLIST		М	М	PC-1211 can emulate with LIST
LOCK			В	
LPRINT		Р	В	See Note 2
MERGE	M	*	М	* PC-1245/1251 have
NEW	M	M	М	this command.
NEXT	P	Р	P	
ON ERROR			P	
ON GOSUB		P	P	
ON GOTO		P	P	
PAUSE	P	P	Р	
PASS		M		
PRINT	Р	Р	В	See Note 2
PRINT #	В	В	В	
RADIAN	В	В	В	
RANDOM		В	В	
READ		Р	Р	
REM	Р	Р	P	

### Verbs and Commamds (continued)

	PC-1211	PC-1245 PC-1251 PC-1401 PC-1402	PC-15 <b>99</b>	Comments
RESTORE		Р	Р	
RETURN	Р	Р	P	
RLINE			В	
RMTOFF			В	
RMTON			В	
ROTATE			В	
RUN	М	M	М	
SORGN			В	
STOP	Р	P	P	
TAB			В	
TEST	Į.	!	В	
TEXT			В	
TROFF		В	В	
TRON		В	В	
UNLOCK			В	
USING	P	В	В	See Note 3
WAIT		В	В	1

Note 1: There are some minor differences between the PC-1245/1251/1401/1402 and the PC-1211 in the behavior of AREAD following PRINT, but these are unlikely to cause problems in ordinary usage.

Note 2: Add PRINT = LPRINT and PRINT = PRINT statements to PC-1211 programs to achieve the desired results on the PC-1245/1251/1401/1402.

Note 3: On the PC-1211 the USING format applies to all displays on the line in which the USING clause appears, even if the variable precedes the verb. On the other models, the USING format applies only to displays which follow the verb and remains in effect until cancelled by another USING verb.

Example:

$$10 A = -123.456$$

20 PAUSE USING "####.##"; A

30 PAUSE A, USING "####"; A

When excuted, this program displays the following:

### **Pseudovariables**

In this and the following charts the features are simply marked with a 'Y' when the machine has the feature.

	PC-1211	PC-1245 PC-1251 PC-1401 PC-1402	PC-1500	Comments
INKEY\$		Y	Y	
MEM	Y	Υ	Υ	
PI or $\pi$	Y	Υ	Υ	<b>PC-1211</b> has only $\pi$
TIME			Υ	

### Numeric Functions

•	PC-1211	PC-1245 PC-1251	PC-1401 PC-1402	PC-1500	Comments
ABS	Υ	Y	Y	Y	
ACS	Y	Y	Y	Y	
AHC			Y		
AHS			Y		
AHT			Y		
ASN	Y	Y	Y	Y	
ATN	Y	Y	Y	Y	
cos	Y	Y	Y	Y	
CUR			Y		
DEG	Y	Y	Y	Y	
DMS	Y	Y	Y	Y	
EXP	Y	Y	Y	Y	
FACT			Y		
HCS			Y		
HSN			Y		
HTN			Y		
INT	Y	Y	Y	Y	
LN	Y	Y	. Y	Y	
LOG	Y	Y	Y	Y	
NOT		Y	Y	Y	
POINT				Y	
POL			Y		
RCP			Y		

### APPENDIX G Feature Comparison

	PC-1211	PC-1245 PC-1251	PC-1401 PC-1402	PC-1500	Comments
REC			Y		
RND		Y	Y	Y	
ROT			Y		
SGN	Y	Y	Y	Y	
SIN	Y	Υ	Y	Y	
SQR or $\sqrt{}$	Y	Y	Υ ,	Y	PC-1211 has only $\sqrt{}$
SQU			Y		
STATUS				Y	
TAN	Y	Y	Y	Y	
TEN			Y		

### String Functions

	PC-1211	PC-1245 PC-1251 PC-1401 PC-1402	PC1500	Comments
ASC		Y	Y	
CHR\$		Y	Υ	
LEFT\$		Y	Υ	
LEN		Y	Υ	
MID\$		Y	Υ	
RIGHT\$		Y	Y	
STR\$		Y	Y	
VAL		Y	Υ	

### Operators

	PC-1211	PC-1245 PC-1251 PC-1401 PC-1402	PC-15 <b>00</b>	Comments
^	Υ	Y	Υ	
*, /, +, -	Y	Y	Υ	
>,>=,=,<>,<=,<	Y	Y	Y	
AND, OR,		Y	Y	
&		Y	Y	

# APPENDIX H Using Program Developed for the PC-1245 or PC-1250/1251

### Modifications Required to PC-1245 Programs

While the PC-1401/1402 uses almost the same set of BASIC statements as that used on the PC-1245, the former has some expanded BASIC features. When using the programs developed for the PC-1245 on the PC-1401/1402, it is necessary to modify the following:

1. Multiplication without using the operator " \* ":

On the PC-1245, the operator (\*) for multiplication may be omitted, such as AB for A\*B or CD for C\*D. On the PC-1401/1402, the multiplication operator (\*) cannot be omitted since the computer treats two consecutive characters, such as AB or CD, as simple variables. Use the specification on the right hand side of the following example:

(e.q.) 
$$A = SIN BC \longrightarrow A = SIN (B * C)$$

2. Definition of subscripted variables (such as AC( )) by using the DIM statement: On the PC-1245, if, for example, DIM A(30) is executed, memory locations for A(27) through A(30) are set aside as an extension of a fixed variable definition area. On the PC-1401/1402, however, the execution of DIM A(30) reserves a separate memory area for array variables A(0) through A(30) for the array named A.

When defining subscripted variables (such as A ( )) as an extension of fixed variables, use the specification on the right hand side of the following example:

DIM A (30) 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 A (30) = 0

3. Data I/O statement for tape files:

On the PC-1245, the execution of, for instance, the PRINT# C statement saves the contents of the variable C and all the subsequent variables to a tape file. On the PC-1401/1402, however, the execution of the same statement saves the contents of the variable C only.

To save the contents of a specific variable and all the subsequent variables, use the specification on the right hand side of the following examples:

(e.g.) PRINT# A 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 PRINT# A\*

PRINT# C  $\longrightarrow$  INPUT# C\*

4. Definition of the 😑 key:

On the PC-1401/1402, the key cannot be used as a definition assignment key. If it is defined as a definition assignment key in a program, modify the assignment to some other key.

(e.g.) 100 "=": 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 100 "N":

### APPENDIX H Using Program

5. Value of a loop variable after completion of a FOR-NEXT loop:

The value of a loop variable obtained after the execution of a FOR-NEXT loop completed on the PC-1401/1402 is different from that obtained on the PC-1245. If the value of a loop variable is used in a conditional expression in a PC-1245 program, increment it by one when it is used on the PC-1401/1402.

(e.g.) 
$$10 \text{ FOR I} = 0 \text{ TO } 10$$

50 NEXT I

60 IF I = 10 THEN 100

Modify the value of I in line 60 as follows:

(On the PC-1401/1402, the value of a loop variable must be incremented by one step value. The number of loop execution cycles remains the same, however.)

6. Exponent symbol "E":

The PC-1401/1402 uses the uppercase letter "E" for its exponent symbol. The following change is required:

$$A = 1.234 \xrightarrow{E \cdot 5} \longrightarrow A = 1.234 \xrightarrow{E5}$$

$$B = E \cdot 6 \longrightarrow B = 1 \xrightarrow{E6}$$

If a PC-1245 program is read from a tape file into the PC-1401/1402, the change for the exponent symbol described just above will automatically be done by the PC-1401/1402.

7. The character code of the PC-1245 is partially different from that of the PC-1401/1402. When the following codes are designated by the CHR\$ function, change the codes.

Character <u>Code</u>	PC-1245	PC-1401/1402
39 (&27)		,
91 (&5B)	$\sqrt{}$	[
93 (&5D)	$\pi$	]
96 (&60)	ΙE	— (Error)
251 (&FB)	— (Error)	π
252 (&FC)	— (Error)	$\sqrt{}$

Note: As shown above, the PC-1401/1402 does not have the characters  $\square$  and  $\bowtie$  and the PC-1245 does not have  $\rightsquigarrow$ , [ , and ] .

### Modifications Required to PC-1250/1251

When programs created for the PC-1250/1251 are executed on the PC-1401/1402, the modifications mentioned in previous paragraph for PC-1245 and the following modifications are required for the program:

1. When the total number of columns exceed 16 with a USING format in the PRINT expression ERROR 7 results.

Example: 10 USING "############"

17 columns or more

### 20 PRINT A

Note: When the total number of columns specified in the integer part exceed 11 including sign digit, the excess part is ignored. Also when the total number of columns of the integer part specified exceed 11, this integer part is regarded as 11 digits in the PC-1401/1402.

### Examples:

- 1) 10: USING "################"."
  This format does not cause the error.
- 2) 10: USING "###############"
  This format does not also cause the error.
  Interger part: 11 digits, Decimal point: 1 digit and Decimal part: 4 digits

Total: 16 digits (less than 17 digits)

- 3) 10: USING "################"
  This format cause the error 7.
  (Total digits are greater than 16 digits.)
- Change the USING format to within 16 columns.
- 2. When the integer part exceeds 8 columns with a USING format in the PRINT expression, expression, ERROR 7 results.

Example: 10 USING "#########"

9 columns or more

### 20 PRINT A, B

- Change the USING format to within 8 columns.
- 3. When a message of the form INPUT "....."; A exceeds 15 columns, the beginning part of the message is not displayed.
  - Shorten the message.

#### APPENDIX H Using Program

"~"

- 4. When the display contents of the form PRINT expression; expression; expression; exceeds 16 columns, when the character string of the expression in the form of PRINT expression, expression exceeds 8 columns, or when a message of the form INPUT "....", A exceeds 16 columns, the excess part is not displayed.
  - Rewrite so that it fit.

### Additional modifications

- 1. The PC-1245, PC-1250, and PC-1251 use a line number ranging from 1—999, whereas this model has an extended line number ranging from 1—65279. Therefore, the line number uses 3 bytes in RAM (PC-1245 series uses 2 bytes). The modification is carried out automatically when the program is loaded through the cassette tape. There is a possibility of memory overflow (ERROR 6) when loading or executing a long program.
- This model does not have CHAIN and MERGE commands, as used in PC-1245 series. Therefore, key entry of these is not possible, but they can be loaded as a program of the PC-1245 series through the cassette tape.
   These commands, if used, will be skipped in execution, and displayed by symbol
- 3. In loading a program of the PC-1245 series through the cassette tape, the computer will remain BUSY for one to two seconds after the tape has stopped due to modification of the line number (2 bytes to 3 bytes) as mentioned previously. During this period, symbol "\*" will be displayed at the right most column of the display as in loading a program.
- 4. For programs created after execution of the MERGE command and loaded through the cassette tape, only the first program is read in.

Note: The PC-1245, PC-1250 or PC-1251 cannot read from a tape which contains programs developed for the PC-1401/1402.

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

By reading the explanations of the various functions, you will probably have acquired a good knowledge of what this machine can do. To become competent in BASIC of what this machine can do. To become competent in BASIC programming, it is important to generate your own programs in addition to understanding this manual. It is recommended to get familiar with CALculator mode by actually using the computer. The following pages contain useful examples of BASIC programs and usage examples of the CALculator mode.

(Sharp Corporation and/or its subsidiaries assume no responsibilities or obligations to any losses or damages that could arise through the use of the software programs employed in this instruction manual.)

NOTE: • Flowcharts have been added for the programs with complicated structures. At the end of each program, we added the number of bytes used for the program.

### **CONTENTS**

Title)	(page
• Dual regression analysis	205
Two way configuration method	210
● Comparison of mean values	216
• R-L-C circuits impedance	219
● Pulse circuits	224
• Roots of equations (Newton's method)	226
• Numerical integration (Simpson's method)	230
Softlanding game	237
• Typing practice	
• Total amount tables	243
● Loan Calculation	249

Note: Titles marked (c) are examples of the usage of CALculator mode.

### Program Title: DUAL REGRESSION ANALYSIS

When there is a relationship between some values  $(x_i, y_i, z_i)$   $i = 1, \dots, n$  a regression can be done using these values to find the regression equation z = ax + by + c. This method can be applied for finding the relationship between height (x), weight (y) and bust (z).

### **INSTRUCTIONS**

1) DEF A : [Data input]

After the printer output or display output has been selected, input the data to x, y, z. Only press **ENTER** for the end of the input when "x=" indicated.

- 2) DEF B: [Output of the analysis]

  Select the printer output or display output. Then the means, variances, correlation coefficient and the regression coefficients are output.
- 3) DEF C: [Estimation by the regression equation]

  After the printer output or display output has been selected, input the data x, y. Then make estimates using the regression coefficient calculated in DEF B.

Note: When selecting outputs, "P=P" means the display output, and "P=LP" means the printer output.

### **CONTENTS**

Values are calculated as follows;

n = number of pieces of data

$$S_{xx} = \sum (x_i - \bar{x})^2$$

$$S_{yy} = \sum (y_i - \bar{y})^2$$

$$S_{zz} = \sum (z - \bar{z})^2$$

$$S_{xy} = \sum (x_i - \bar{x}) (y_i - \bar{y})$$

$$S_{yz} = \sum (y_i - \bar{y}) (z_i - \bar{z})$$

$$S_{xz} = \sum (x_i - \bar{x}) (z_i - \bar{z})$$

Regression coefficient

$$a = \frac{S_{xz} \cdot S_{yy} - S_{yy} \cdot S_{xy}}{S_{xx} \cdot S_{yy} - (S_{xy})^2}$$

$$b = \frac{S_{yz} \cdot S_{xx} - S_{xz} \cdot S_{xy}}{S_{xx} \cdot S_{yy} - (S_{xy})^2}$$

$$c = \bar{z} - a\bar{x} - b\bar{y}$$

To obtain an estimate, use the following formula;

$$z = ax + by + c.$$

Variances

$$V_{x} = \frac{S_{xx}}{n}$$

$$r_{xy} = \frac{S_{xy}}{\sqrt{S_{xx}}\sqrt{S_{yy}}}$$

Correlation coefficients

$$V_{y} = \frac{S_{yy}}{n}$$

$$V_{z} = \frac{S_{zz}}{n}$$

$$r_{zz} = \frac{S_{zz}}{\sqrt{S_{xx}}\sqrt{S_{zz}}}$$

$$r_{zx} = \frac{S_{xz}}{\sqrt{S_{xx}}\sqrt{S_{zz}}}$$

### **EXAMPLE**

Use the following data for regression analysis.

	1	2	3	4	5
x	24	17	22	21	20
у	2300	1500	1600	1100	900
z	9027	5983	5274	4435	3365

Also, after the regression coefficient has been found, estimate z for:

$$x = 17$$

$$y = 600$$

### KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE

### <Data input>

Step No.	Key Input		Display	Remarks
1	DEF A	]	P = P 1 P = LP 2 _	Selection of display output
2	1	ENTER	X =	Data input
3	24	ENTER	Υ =	Data input
4	2300	ENTER	Z =	Data input
5	9027	ENTER	X =	Data input
	:		Ė	
	:		Z =	
17	3365	ENTER	X =	Data input
18		ENTER	>	END

### < Result output>

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF B	P=P1 P=LP2-	Selection of printer output
2	2 ENTER	>	After the results have output to the printer, END

### < Estimate>

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF C	P=P1 P=LP2-	Selection of display output
2	1 ENTER	X =	Data input
3	17 ENTER	Y =	Data input
4	400 ENTER	Z = 2311.149	Indicate the estimation z
5	ENTER	X =	
6	ENTER	>	END

### PRINTED OUTPUTS

### PROGRAM LISTING

( ee	TO PASSORS DATA TODAY
( DEF B )	10:"A":REM DATA INPUT 15:CLEAR :WAIT :V=1
MX= 20.800	20:E=0
MY= 1480.000	30:GOSUB 1000
MZ= 5616.800	40:INPUT "X=";X:50T0 60
	50:END
VX= 5.360	60:INPUT "Y=";Y,"Z=";Z
YY= 233600.000	70:GOSUB 1200
VZ= 3669666.561	80:F=F+X:G=G+Y:H=H+Z
74- 3007000.J01	90:I=I+X*X:J=J+Y*Y:K=K+
	Z*Z
RXY= 0.551005	100:L=L+X*Y:M=M+Y*Z:N=N+
RYZ= 0.976378	Z*X
RZX= 0.481886	110:E=E+1
	115:GOSUB 1100
A= -66.294	120:GOTO 40
B= 4.043	130:END 140:"B":REM MEANS
C= 1012.543	150:GOSUB 1000
0- 1012.045	155:GOSUB 1300
	160:X=F/E:PRINT "MX= ";X
	+W
( DEF A )	170:Y=G/E:PRINT "MY= ";Y
X= 24.	+i4
Ÿ= 2300.	180:Z=H/E:PRINT "MZ= ";Z
Z= 9027.	+μ
2- 7021.	190:GOSUB 1100
11 47	200:0=I-E*X*X:P=J-E*Y*Y:
X= 17.	Q=K-E*Z*Z
Y= 1500.	210:R=L-E*X*Y:S=M-E*Y*Z:
Z= 598 <b>3.</b>	T=N-E*Z*X 220:REM VARIANCES
	230:60SUB 1300
X= 22.	240:PRINT "VX= ";O/E+W
Y= 1600.	250:PRINT "VY= ";P/E+W
Z= 5274.	260:PRINT "VZ= ";Q/E+W
2 0211	270:GOSUB 1100
V= 0+	280:REM CORRELATION COEF
X= 21.	FICIENT
Y= 1100.	290:GOSUB 1400
Z= 4435.	300:PRINT "RXY=";R/SQR (
	0*P)+W
X= 20.	310:PRINT "RYZ=";S/SQR (
Y= 900.	P*Q)+W 320:PRINT "RZX=";T/SQR (
Z= 3365.	0*Q)+W
2- 5365.	330:GOSUB 1100
	340:REM REGRESSION COEFF
( DEF C )	ICIENTS
X= 17.	350:GOSUB 1300
	360:D=0*P-R*R
	370:A=(T*P-S*R)/D:PRINT
Z= 2311.149	ΥA= Υ;A+W
and En Committee	380:B=(S*O-T*R)/D:PRINT
DEF A and DEF C are print	"B= ";B+W 700.C=2 A.W B.W.BBIUT NO.
samples when printer output is selected.	390:C=Z-A*X-B*Y:PRINT "C = ";C+W
	- 10±M

### **MEMORY CONTENTS**

400:GOSUB 1100
410:END
420: °C":REM ESTIMATION
425:V=2
430:GOSUB 1000:GOSUB 130
0
440:INPUT "X=";X:GOTO 46
9
450:END
460:INPUT "Y=";Y
470:Z=A*X+B*Y+C
480:GOSUB 1200
485:GOSUB 1100
490:50T0 440
500:END
1000: INPUT "P=P1 P=LP
2 °;U
1010:IF U=1 PRINT =
PRINT : GOTO 1040
1020:IF H=2 PRINT =
1020:IF U=2 PRINT = LPRINT :GOTO 1040
1030:GOTO 1000
1040:RETURN
1100:REM SPACE
1110:IF U=1 GOTO 1130
1120:IF U=2 PRINT ""
1130:RETURN
1200:REM X-Y-Z PRINT
1210: IF U=1 ON V GOTO 1
260,1240
1220:IF U=2 USING
1230:PRINT "X= ";X:
PRINT "Y= ";Y
1235:IF V=1 LET W=0:
60TO 1250
1240:GOSUB 1300
1250:PRINT "Z= ";Z+W
1250:FRITT 2- 72*W
1300:REM USING 1
1310:USING "####################################
#*:W=5E-4
#*:W=5E-4 1320:RETURN
1400:REM USING 2
1410:USING "##.######":
E=5E+7
1420:RETURN
1500:END

Α	а
В	b
С	С
D	$S_{xx} * S_{yy} - (S_{xy})^2$
Ε	n
F	$\Sigma x_i$
G	$\Sigma y_i$
Н	$\Sigma z_i$
ı	$\Sigma x_i^2$
J	$\Sigma y_i^2$
К	$\Sigma z_i^2$
L	$\sum x_i y_i$
М	$\Sigma y_i z_i$
N	$\sum z_i x_i$
0	$S_{xx}$
P	Syy
Q	Szz
R	$S_{xy}$
S	Syz
T	$S_{zx}$
U	Output flag
>	Program flag
W	For rounding
Х	$x, \bar{x}$
Υ	y, <u>ÿ</u>
Z	$z$ , $\bar{z}$

### Program Title: TWO WAY CONFIGURATION METHOD

This configuration method is for analysing results obtained under different conditions and determining whether there is any relationship between the conditions and the results. To do so we need to analyse the variances and calculate the variance ratio. This is a program for a two way configuration method without repetition.

### INSTRUCTIONS

- 1) DEF A [Data input and check]
  - Input the level number of the elements A, B, then input the data according to the display.
  - After all of the data have entered, select whether you need to check the data or not. If the indicated data is wrong, press
     DEF B and input the correct data.
- 2) DEF C [Results output of the analysis of variances]
  - Select whether you need to print out the entered data.
  - Print out the analysis of variances (variation, the number of degrees of freedom, unbiased variance, unbiased variance ratio).

### REFERENCE (Calculation subject etc.,)

Number of levels: a, b

Data: 
$$|x_{ij}|$$
  $(i = 1 \sim a, j = 1 \sim b)$ 

1. 
$$[X] = (\sum_{ij} x_{ij})^2 / ab$$

$$[A] = \sum_{i} (\sum_{j} x_{ij})^2 / b$$

$$[B] = \sum_{j} (\sum_{i} x_{ij})^2 / a$$

$$[ABS] = \sum_{ij} x^2_{ij}$$

2. 
$$S_A = [A] - [X]$$
  
 $S_B = [B] - [X]$   
 $S_T = [ABS] - [X]$   
 $S_E = [ABS] - [A] - [B]$ 

3. 
$$\phi_A = a - 1$$
  
 $\phi_B = b - 1$   
 $\phi_E = ab - a - b - 1$   
 $\phi_T = ab - 1$ 

4. 
$$V_A = S_A / \phi_A$$
  
 $V_B = S_B / \phi_B$   
 $V_E = S_E / \phi_E$ 

5. 
$$F_A = V_A / V_E$$
  
 $F_B = V_B / V_E$ 

### **EXAMPLE**

Examine relations of the quantity of hormone given, kind of food and weight gain from the following data by analysis of variances.

Data: The weight gain of a piglet fed with different quantities of hormone.

		Kind of food		
		B <sub>1</sub>	B <sub>2</sub>	B <sub>3</sub>
Quantity of Hormone (mg/ind)	A <sub>1</sub> (10)	79	68	93
	A <sub>2</sub> (20)	86	90	100
	A <sub>3</sub> (30)	104	110	118

### PRINTED OUTPUTS

LEVEL A=3. B=3.

DATA

X(1,1)=79.

X(1,2)=68.

X(1,3)=93.

X(2,1)=86.

X(2,2)=90.

X(2,3)=100.

X(3,1)=104.

X(3,2)=110.

X(3.3)=118.

VARIATION

A=1432.889

B=401.556

E=115.111

T=1949.556

DEGREES OF FREEDOM

A=2.

B=2.

Ε=4.

T=8.

UNBIASED VARIANCES

A=716.444

B=200.778

E=28.778

RATIOS OF

UNBIASED VARIANCE

A=24.896

B=6.977

### KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE

### < Data input and check >

Step No.			Display	Remarks
1	DEF A		LEVEL A = _	Number of level A
2	3	ENTER	LEVEL B =	Number of level B
3	3	ENTER	X(1, 1) =	Data input
			?	
4	79	ENTER	X(1, 2) =	
			?	
5	68	ENTER	X(1, 3) =	
			7	
			Input in the same manner	
11	110	ENTER	X(3, 3) =	
			?	
12	118	ENTER	INPUT END	
		-	CHECK (Y/N) = _	Check entry
13	Y	ENTER	X(1, 1) = 79	
14		ENTER	X(1, 2) = 68	
			Input in the same manner	
		ENTER	X(3, 1) = 100	Since input-miss was found, correct by DEF B
19	DEF B		X(3, 1) = ?	
			?	
20	104	ENTER	X(3, 1) = 104	
:		ENTER	. Check continuously	
23		ENTER	>	END

# <Output of the analysis of variance>

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF C	DATA PRINT (Y/N)_	Print the input data?
2	Y ENTER		Printout the analysis of variances.
		>	END

# PROGRAM LISTING

10:"A":CLEAR

10 * F *GEERN	200-10K 0-0 10 B 1-0/0/-
20:IMPUT "LEVEL A=";A	0:MEXT J
30:INPUT "LEVEL B=";B	310:T=0:S=0:Z=0:R=0
40:DIM O(B-1),B\$(0),X(A	320:FOR I=0 TO A-1:P=0:
-1,B-1)	FOR J=0 TO B-1
50:FOR I=0 TO A-1:FOR K	330:E=X(I,J):Z=Z+E*E:O(J
=0 TO B-1	)=0(J)+E:P=P+E:NEXT
60:B\$(0)="X("+STR\$ (I+1	J
)+","+STR\$ (K+1)+")=	340:S=S+P*P:R=R+P:NEXT I
V	350:R=R*R/(A*B):S=S/B:
70:PAUSE B\$(0):INPUT X(	FOR I=0 TO B-1:T=T+0
I.K):NEXT K:NEXT I:	(I)*0(I):NEXT I:T=T/
GOTO 90	A .
80:6070 70	360:S=S-R:LPRINT "":
90:PAUSE "INPUT END":B\$	LPRINT "VARIATION"
(∅) = <sup>v v</sup>	365:B\$(0)=" A=":C=S:
100:INPUT "CHECK (Y/N)="	GOSUB 1000
18\$(0)	370:T=T-R:Z=Z-R:P=Z-S-T
	<del> </del>
110:IF B\$(0)="N" END	375:B\$(0)=" B=":C=T:
120:IF B\$(0)<>"Y" GOTO 1	GOSUB 1000:B\$(0)=" E
00	=":C=P:GOSUB 1000:B\$
125:U3ING	(0)=" T=":C=Z:GOSUB
130: I=0	1999
135:J=0	380:F=A-1: LPRINT "":
140:PRINT "X(";STR\$ (I+1	LPRINT "DEGREES OF F
);",";STR\$ (J+1);")=	REEDOM":S=S/F:G=B-1
";X(I,J)	385:B\$(0)=" A=":C=F:
150:J=J+1:IF J=B GOTO 17	GOSUB 1000:B\$(0)=" B
Й	=":C=G:GOSUB 1000
•	
160:GOTO 140	390:T=T/G:O=(A-1)*(B-1):
170:I=I+1:IF I=A GOTO 19	P=P/0:D=A*B-1
ଥି	395:B\$(0)=" E=":C=O:
180:GOTO 135	GOSUB 1000:B\$(0)=" T
190:END	=":C=D:GOSUB 1000
200: "B":PAUSE "X(";STR\$	400:LPRINT "":LPRINT "UN
(I+1);°,°;STR\$ (J+1)	BIASED VARIANCES*
; ")=?"	405:B\$(0)=" A=":C=S:
210:INPUT X(I,J)	GOSUB 1000:B\$(0)=" B
220:50T0 140	=":C=T:GOSUB 1000:B\$
230:END	(0)=" E=":C=P:GOSUB
240: "C": M\$="":INPUT "DAT	1000
A PRINT(YZN)";M\$	
	410:F=S/P:LPRINT "":
250:IF (M\$="Y")+(M\$="N")	LPRINT "RATIOS OF":
<>1 GOTO 240	LPRINT " UNBIASED
260:IF M≸="N" GOTO 300	VARIANCE"
270:LPRINT "":LPRINT "LE	415:B\$(0)=" A=":C=F:
VEL A=";A:LPRINT"	GOSUB 1000:B\$(0)=" B
B=a:B	=":C=T/P:GCSUB 1000
	•
280:LPRINT "DATA":FOR I=	420:END
0 TO A-1:FOR K=0 TO	1000:REM ROUND
B-1	1010:LPRINT B\$(0); INT
290:LPRINT "X(";STR\$ (I+	(C*1E3+.5)/1E3
1);",";STR\$ (K+1);")	1020:RETURN
=";X(I,K):NEXT K:	1030:END
NEXT I	1365 bytes

300:FOR J=0 TO B-1:O(J)=

# **MEMORY CONTENTS**

Α	Number of Level a
В	Number of Leve b
С	<b></b>
D	√ √
E	J
F	$\phi_{a,} F_{a}$
G	φ <sub>b</sub>
Н	
ı	<b>√</b>
J	√ √ √
К	<b>√</b>
L	
M\$	<b>√</b>
N	
0	$\phi_e, \phi_x$
Р	$\sqrt{, S_e, V_e}$
a	
R	√,[X]
S	$[A], S_a, V_a$
Т	[B], $S_b$ , $V_b$
U	
٧	
W.	
Х	
Y	
Z	$[ABS], S_T$
0(*)	$\sum_{i}^{\sum x^{2}} ij$
X(*)	Input Data
B\$ (Ø)	<b>√</b>

### COMPARISON OF MEAN VALUES

This example will introduce the joint of CAL mode statistical treatment and BASIC program. Assume there is a correspondence between the samples and each sample difference  $d_i$  is a sample of a population which forms a normal distribution. Value t has a degree of freedom n-1 and will be determined by

$$t = \frac{\bar{d}}{\frac{S\bar{d}}{\sqrt{n}}}$$

This t will be used for determining whether two sample populations have statistically equivalent mean values or not.

Here, mean value of difference

$$\bar{d} = \frac{\sum (x_i - y_i)}{n} = \frac{\sum x_i - \sum y_i}{n}$$

standard deviation of difference

$$S_{\bar{d}} = \left(\frac{\sum (x_i - y_i)^2 - (\sum (x_i - y_i))^2 / n}{n - 1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$
$$= \left(\frac{\sum x_i^2 - 2\sum x_i y_i + \sum y_i^2 - n \cdot \bar{d}^2}{n - 1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

1) Input data in the statistical mode of the CAL mode first, then, find t value by using the statistical quantity stored in the U-Z memory in BASIC mode.

Memory	U	٧	W	Х	Υ	Z
Statistical quantity	$\Sigma y^2$	$\Sigma y$	$\Sigma xy$	$\Sigma x^2$	$\sum x$	n

$$\bar{d}=(Y-V)/Z \rightarrow M$$
 (mean value) 
$$S_{\bar{d}}=SQR \ ((X-2*W+U-Z*M^{\wedge}2)/(Z-1)) \rightarrow SD \ (\text{standard} \ t=M/SD*SOR\ Z \rightarrow T \ (t \ \text{value})$$
 deviation)

2) The program in BASIC mode is excecuted, and output following;

SD: standard deviation of the difference  $(S_{\bar{d}})$ 

M: mean value of the difference  $(\bar{d})$ 

T: t value (t)

DF: Degree of freedom (Df)

3) The examination needs the t distribution table

#### **EXAMPLE**

Students in two classes in one grade (10 students in each classes) are assumed to have the same level of intelligence. After one year of giving them two different types of educational methods, the following results were found;

Α	10	4	6	2	7	13	3	11	5	9
В	8	3	4	2	3	11	4	7	4	7

With this data, examine the following hypotheses;

H<sub>0</sub>: Both educational methods have been equally effective.

 $H_1$ : The effectiveness of one method is different with 95% confidence.

#### **ANSWER**

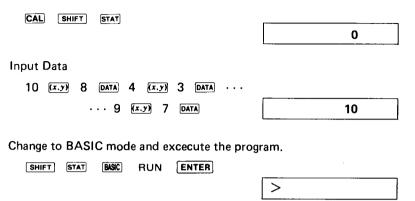
The rejection area is |t| > 2 under the conditions; degrees of freedom 9, significant level 5% (From t distribution tables)

### 1) Make the BASIC program

152 bytes

#### 2) Operation

Set statistical mode in CAL mode.



The following result is printed out.

#### 3) Conclusion

Since the t value is in the rejection area, hypothesis  $H_0$  would be rejected. Therefore, there is a difference in the results of different education with 95% confidence.

This program calculates the impedance of a parallel or serial connection of R-L-C circuit elements at a frequency of f.

### **PROBLEM**

#### 1. Serial R-L-C circuit

$$\omega = 2\pi f$$

$$Z = R + j(\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C}) = x + jy$$

Impedance: 
$$|Z| = \sqrt{R^2 + (\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C})^2}$$

Phase: 
$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C}}{R} \right)$$

Then |Z| and  $\theta$  are obtained by  $(x,y) \xrightarrow{POL} (r,\theta)$  conversion.

#### 2. Parallel R-L-C circuit

$$\omega = 2\pi f$$

$$Z = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R} + j(\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L})} = x + jy$$

Impedance: 
$$|Z| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{R^2} + (\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L})^2}}$$

Phase: 
$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \left[ R \left( \frac{1}{\omega L} - \omega C \right) \right]$$

$$\frac{1}{R} + j(\omega C - \frac{1}{\omega L}) = x' + jy'$$

and calculate as follows:

$$(x', y') \xrightarrow{POL} (r, \theta) \longrightarrow (\frac{1}{r}, -\theta) \xrightarrow{REC} (x, y)$$

$$\downarrow \qquad \downarrow \qquad \downarrow$$

$$|Z| = \theta$$

#### **INSTRUCTIONS**

1. **DEF** A [The impedance of the serial circuit]

Key-in the values of resistance R ( $\Omega$ ), capacitance C ( $\mu$ F), inductance L (mH), and frequency f (Hz) sequentially. The result of the calculation for x, y, |z|, and  $\theta$  (degree) will be displayed.

2. DEF B [The impedance of the parallel circuit]
The operation is the same as for DEF A.

#### **EXAMPLE**

Serial circuit

Parallel circuit

$$\begin{cases}
R = 5 [\Omega] \\
C = 10 [\mu F] \\
L = 25 [mH] \\
f = 50 [Hz]
\end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} R = 8 [\Omega] \\ C = 0.5 [\mu F] \\ L = 40 [mH] \\ f = 60 [Hz] \end{cases}$$

# **KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE**

# < Serial circuit >

Step No.	Key	/ Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF A		SERIAL CIRCUIT	Serial circuit
-		-	R = _	Resistance $[\Omega]$
2	5	ENTER	C =	Capacitance [µF]
3	10	ENTER	L = _	Inductance [mH]
4	25	ENTER	F =	Frequency [Hz]
5	50	ENTER	×	Display for <i>x</i>
6		ENTER	5	Display for X
7		ENTER	Υ	Display for y
8		ENTER	-310.4559045	2.0p.dy 161 y
9		ENTER	IMPEDANCE Z	Display for impedance $ Z $
10		ENTER	310.4961653	Display for impedance 121
11		ENTER	THETA (DEG)	Display for phase $ heta$
12		ENTER	-89.07731137	Display for prices
13		ENTER	>	END

# < Parallel circuit >

Step No.	Ke	y Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF B		PARALLEL CIRCUIT	Parallel circuit
			R =	Resistance [Ω]
2	8		C =	Capacitance [μF]
3	0.5	ENTER	L =	Inductance [mH]
4	40	ENTER	F=	Frequency [Hz]
5	60	ENTER	×	Display for <i>x</i>
6		ENTER	6.250732478	Display for X
7		ENTER	Y	Display for y
8		ENTER	3.306690691	Display for y
9		ENTER	IMPEDANCE Z	Display for impedance $ Z $
10		ENTER	7.071482153	Display for impedance (2)
11		ENTER	THETA (DEG)	Display for phase $ heta$
12		ENTER	27.87922142	Display for phase v
13		ENTER	>	END

# PROGRAM LISTING

HORDIA
10:"A":A=0:PAUSE "SERIA L CIRCUIT":GOTO 30
F CIKCOIL FOOTO 30
20: "B": A=1: PAUSE "PARAL
LEL CIRCUIT"
30:DEGREE :WAIT
40:INPUT "R=";R
50:INPUT "C=";C:C=C*1E-
6
60:INPUT "L=";L:L=L*1E-
3
70:INPUT "F=";F
80:W=2*∏*F
90:IF A=1 GOTO 250
100:REM SERIAL
110:U=R:V=W*L-RCP (W*C)
120:Y=POL (U,V)
150:REM PRINT
160:PRINT "X":PRINT U
170:PRINT "Y":PRINT V
180: PRINT "IMPEDANCE Z":
PRINT Y
190:PRINT "THETA(DEG)":
PRINT Z
200:END
250:REM PARALLEL
260:Y=RCP R:Z=W*C-RCP (W
*[)
270:Y=POL (Y,Z):U=RCP Y
280:V=-Z
290:Y=REC (U,V)
300:REM PRINT
310:PRINT "X":PRINT Y
320:PRINT "Y":PRINT Z
330:PRINT "IMPEDANCE Z":
PRINT U
340:PRINT "THETA(DEG)":
PRINT V
350:END

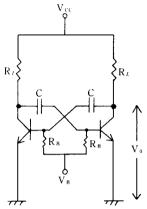
# **MEMORY CONTENTS**

Α	Flag	
В		
С	Capacitance	
D		
E		
F	Frequency	
G		
Н		
J		
К		
L	Inductance	
М		
2		
0		
Р		
Q		
R	Resistance	
S		
Т		
υ	x	Z
٧	у	θ
W	2πf (ω)	2π f (ω)
Х		
Υ	<i>  Z</i>	x', x
Z	θ	y' y

Calculation Title:

### PULSE CIRCUIT

The following equations apply to the astable multivibrator shown as below.



$$T = CR_B \ln \left( \frac{V_{cc} + V_B}{V_{cc}} \right)$$

$$V_0 = V_{cc} [1 - \exp(-\frac{1}{CRL}t)]$$

$$tr = -CR_L [\ln(1-0.9) - \ln(1-0.1)]$$

Where T is the period of the oscillation output, and tr is the rise time of the output pulse.

### **EXAMPLES**

Obtain the period and rise time of the output for the following circuit parameters.

$$V_{cc} = 12 \text{ [V]}$$
  $V_B = 9 \text{ [V]}$   $R_L = 1 \text{ [K}\Omega\text{]}$   $C = 500 \text{ [pF]}$   $R_B = 50 \text{ [K}\Omega\text{]}$ 

#### **OPERATION**

- 1. Set the CAL mode and specify the floating point display.
- 2. Obtain the period T.

Answer: Approx 14.0 ( $\mu s$ )

3. Obtain the rise time Tr.

500 +/- EXP	12 +/- X EXP 3 X ( (	0.000001098
) =		
F⇔E	(Switching of the display)	1.098612289E-06

Answer: Approx. 1.1 ( $\mu s$ )

Program Title: ROOTS OF EQUATIONS (Newton's method)

### **OVERVIEW** (mathematical)

Finding the roots of equations is usually troublesome, but by using Newton's method the approximate roots of equations can be found.

When 1 root is found, depending on the interval width, by using Newton's method the starting point automatically changes.

#### CONTENTS

$$X_{n+1} = X_n - \frac{f(X_n)}{f'(X_n)}$$

If the absolute value of the distance between  $X_n$  and  $X_{n+1}$  is less than  $10^{-8}$ ,  $X_n$  is considered a root and is displayed. Here the first derivative is defined in the following way:

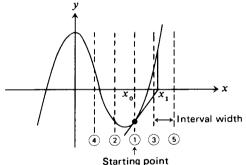
$$f'(X) = \frac{f(X+h) - f(X)}{h}$$
 (h is the minute interval)

Change 1E-8 in line 340 to change the value for 10<sup>-8</sup>.

# INSTRUCTIONS

INPUT

Starting point
Minute interval
Interval width



OUTPUTS

Root value (by pressing the **ENTER** key, the next interval's root is found)

#### **EXAMPLE**

$$x^3 - 2x^2 - x + 2 = 0$$
 (the roots are -1, 1, 2)

starting point = 0

minute interval = 10<sup>-4</sup>

interval = 0.5

The above values are used in the calculation.

The functions are to be written into lines after 500 as subroutines.

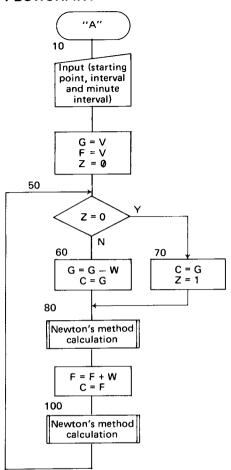
How to type in the example:

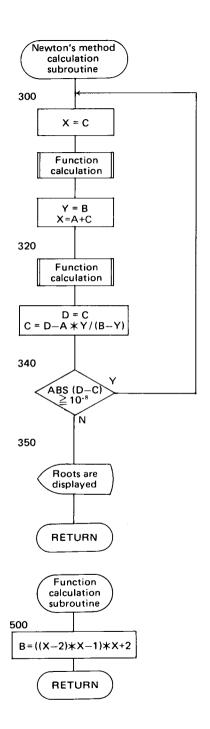
- 1. Go into PRO mode by operating the mode change key.
- 2. 500B = ((X-2) \* X-1) \* X+2 ENTER 510 RETURN ENTER That is all that had to be done.

# KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE

Step	Key I	nput	Display	Remarks
No.			, ,	
1	DEF A		START POINT = _	Waiting for starting point input
2	Ø	ENTER	MINUTE INTV. =	Waiting for minute interval input
3	0.0001	ENTER	INTERVAL = _	Waiting for interval width input
4	<b>0</b> .5	ENTER	2	Display of roots
5		ENTER	1,	By repeatedly pressing the ENTER key the roots of the function are found.
6		ENTER	-1	
7		ENTER	1.	
8		ENTER	-1,	
9		ENTER	-1.	
10		ENTER	-1	
11		ENTER	2	
		:	:	
		:	:	

### **FLOWCHART**





### PROGRAM LISTING

# 10: "A": INPUT "START POI NT=";V 20: INPUT "MINUTE INTV. = \* ; △ 30: INPUT "INTERVAL=";W 40:6=V:F=V:Z=0 50:IF Z=0 GOTO 70 60:G=G-W:C=G:GOTO 80 70:C=G:Z=1 80:GOSUB 300 90:F=F+W:C=F 100:GOSUB 300 110:GOTO 50 120:END RAM:X=C:GOSUB 500 310:Y=B:X=A+C 320:GOSUB 500 330:D=C:C=D-A\*Y/(B-Y) 340:IF ABS (D-C)>=1E-8 60TO 300 350:BEEP 3:PRINT C 360: RETURN

500:B=((X-2)\*X-1)\*X+2

510:RETURN

275 bytes

#### **MEMORY CONTENTS**

Α	Minute interval
В	f (x)
С	X <sub>o</sub>
D	f (x + h)
E	
F	$\checkmark$
G	✓
Н	
ı	
J	
κ	
L	
M	
N	
0	
Р	
a	
R	
S	
Т	
U	
V	Starting point
w	Interval width
×	×
Y	f (x)
Z	Initial flag

Program Title: NUMERICAL INTEGRATION (Simpson's method)

#### **OVERVIEW**

Numerical Integration is done on function values given at equal interval widths of the integration interval.

If the function equation is written in the program the values in the intervals of integration are automatically given.

### **CONTENTS (Calculation contents)**

1. Data are input and integration carried out.

Simpson's 1/3 formula splits the interval [a, b] into n smaller intervals.

The values of the function over the smaller intervals are approximated in 2's (2i, 2i+1 units) by using a 2nd order equation to approximate the curve.

After the data (function values) for the smaller intervals are input, the integrated values are printed.

$$\int_{a}^{b} f(x) dx = \sum_{i=0}^{N/2-1} \int_{x_{2}i}^{x_{2}i+2} P_{2}^{i}(x) dx$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{N/2-1} I_{i}$$

$$= \frac{h}{3} (y_{0} + 4y_{1} + 2y_{2} + 4y_{3} + \cdots$$

$$\cdots + 4y_{-1} + y_{n})$$

$$\begin{cases}
h = \frac{b-a}{n} \\
I_{i} = \frac{h}{3} (y_{2i} + 4y_{2i+1} + y_{2i+2})
\end{cases}$$

2. Integration using the function equation written in the program

Using the input function equation as a base, the intervals [a, b] are split up into n smaller intervals and the function values are calculated and printed. The integrated values are also printed.

#### INSTRUCTIONS

 Using DEF A, the program is started and a selection of either the data input method or the function equation input method of calculation has to be done. The integration interval's starting point, ending point, and number of divisions has to be input.

The data input method of calculating:

as the integration intervals are being input the data is printed.

The function equation input method of calculating:

the function values are printed according to the function equation.

2. The DEF B corrects the input data as required. Enter revision number and revision value.

- 3. DEF C The integration values are printed according to the integration interval data (function values).
- (Note) The number of divisions is from 2 to 254 and even.

#### **EXAMPLE**

1. The data is input and the calculations are done interval [0, 5], 40 divisions

f (x 0)	4	f(x11)	-7	f (x22)	-2	f (x33)	13
f(x 1)	5.5	f(x12)	-8	f (x 23)	0	f(x34)	12.5
f (x 2)	6	f(x13)	-9	f (x 24)	2	f(x35)	12
f(x 3)	5.7	f (x14)	-9.5	f (x 25)	4	f(x36)	10.5
f (x 4)	5	f(x15)	-10	f (x 26)	6	f (x37)	9
f(x 5)	2	f(x16)	-9.5	f(x27)	7	f (x38)	7.8
f(x 6)	0	f(x17)	-9	f(x28)	8	f(x39)	6
f(x 7)	-1.8	f(x18)	-8.5	f (x 29)	9.7	f (x40)	4
f(x 8)	-3	f(x19)	-7	f (x 30)	11		
f(x 9)	5	f(x20)	-5.5	f(x 31)	12		
f (x10)	-6	f (x21)	-4	f (x 32)	12.5		

2. The function equation is stored in the program and the calculations are done.

$$Y = ((X-2)X-1)X+2$$

interval [0, 1] 20 divisions

The function is stored after line 900 as a subroutine.

How to store into the program (for the case of the example)

(Put in PRO mode)

$$900 Y = ((X-2)*X-1)*X+2$$
 ENTER

910 RETURN ENTER this ends the input

# PRINTED OUTPUTS

A=0. B=5. N=40.  1 F(0)=4.  2 F(0.125)=5.5  3 F(0.25)=6.  4 F(0.375)=5.7  5 F(0.55)=5.  6 F(0.625)=2.  7 F(0.75)=0.  8 F(0.875)=-1.8  9 F(1)=-3.  10 F(1.125)=-5.  11 F(0)=2.  12 F(0.05)=1.945125  13 F(0.1)=1.881  14 F(0.15)=1.880375  15 F(0.2)=1.728  16 F(0.25)=1.640625  17 F(0.3)=1.547  18 F(0.35)=-1.8  19 F(1.125)=-5.  10 F(1.125)=-5.  11 F(0.35)=1.25  12 F(1.375)=-7.  13 F(1.55)=-8.  14 F(0.65)=0.779625  15 F(1.75)=-9.5  16 F(0.75)=0.63  17 F(2)=-9.5  18 F(2.125)=-9.  19 F(2.25)=-8.5  20 F(2.35)=-7.  21 F(2.55)=-5.5  22 F(2.625)=-4.  23 F(2.75)=-2.  24 F(2.875)=0.  25 F(3.125)=4.  27 F(3.25)=6.  28 F(3.375)=11.  32 F(3.25)=6.  28 F(4.25)=12.  33 F(4.25)=12.  33 F(4.25)=12.  34 F(4.125)=13.  35 F(4.25)=12.  37 F(4.5)=10.5  38 F(4.625)=9.  39 F(4.75)=7.8  40 F(4.875)=6.  41 F(5)=4.		
N=40.  1 F(0) ±4. 2 F(0.125) = 5.5 3 F(0.25) = 6. 4 F(0.375) = 5.7 5 F(0.5) = 5. 6 F(0.625) = 2. 7 F(0.75) = 0. 8 F(0.875) = -1.8 9 F(1) = -3. 10 F(1.125) = -5. 11 F(0.5) = 1.447875  12 F(1.375) = -7. 13 F(1.5) = -8. 14 F(1.625) = -9. 15 F(1.75) = -9.5 16 F(1.875) = -10. 17 F(2) = -9.5 18 F(2.125) = -8. 19 F(2.25) = -8. 19 F(2.25) = -8. 20 F(2.375) = -7. 21 F(2.5) = -5. 22 F(2.625) = -4. 23 F(2.75) = 2. 24 F(2.875) = 0. 25 F(3.125) = 4. 27 F(3.375) = 12. 37 F(4.5) = 10. 38 F(4.375) = 12. 37 F(4.5) = 10. 38 F(4.375) = 12. 37 F(4.5) = 10. 38 F(4.4875) = 6. 39 F(4.75) = 13. 35 F(4.625) = 9. 39 F(4.75) = 12. 37 F(4.55) = 10. 38 F(4.625) = 9. 39 F(4.75) = 7. 39 F(4.75) = 7. 30 F(4.875) = 12. 31 F(4.975) = 6.	A=0.	A=0.
1 F(0)=4. 2 F(0.125)=5.5 3 F(0.25)=6. 4 F(0.375)=5.7 3 F(0.1)=1.881 5 F(0.5)=5. 4 F(0.625)=2. 7 F(0.75)=0. 8 F(0.875)=-1.8 9 F(1)=-3. 10 F(1.125)=-5. 11 F(0)=2. 12 F(0.3)=1.5447 11 F(1.25)=-6. 11 F(0.3)=1.5447 11 F(1.25)=-6. 12 F(1.375)=-7. 13 F(1.5)=-8. 12 F(1.75)=-9. 14 F(1.625)=-10. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.75)=-9.5 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=-10. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.75)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12. 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	B=5.	B=1.
1 F(0) = 4. 2 F(0.125) = 5.5 3 F(0.25) = 6. 4 F(0.375) = 5.7 3 F(0.1) = 1.881 5 F(0.5) = 5. 4 F(0.15) = 1.881 5 F(0.5) = 5. 6 F(0.625) = 2. 7 F(0.75) = 0. 8 F(0.875) = 1.8 9 F(1) = -3. 10 F(1.125) = -5. 11 F(0.25) = 1.447875 12 F(1.375) = -7. 13 F(1.5) = -8. 14 F(1.625) = -9. 15 F(1.75) = -9.5 16 F(1.875) = -10. 17 F(2) = -9.5 18 F(2.125) = -8. 19 F(2.25) = -8.5 20 F(2.375) = -7. 21 F(2.5) = -5. 22 F(2.625) = -4. 23 F(2.75) = -2. 24 F(2.875) = 0. 25 F(3.375) = 7. 29 F(3.55) = 8. 30 F(3.625) = 9. 31 F(4.125) = 3. 35 F(4.25) = 12. 35 F(4.125) = 3. 35 F(4.25) = 12. 35 F(4.25) = 12. 35 F(4.125) = 13. 35 F(4.25) = 12. 35 F(4.375) = 12. 37 F(4.5) = 10.5 38 F(4.625) = 9. 39 F(4.75) = 7. 49 F(4.875) = 6.	N=40.	N=20.
2 F(0.125)=5.5 3 F(0.25)=6. 4 F(0.375)=5.7 5 F(0.5)=5.7 5 F(0.5)=5.7 6 F(0.625)=2. 7 F(0.75)=0. 8 F(0.875)=-1.8 9 F(1)=-3. 10 F(1.125)=-5. 11 F(0.5)=1.640625 12 F(0.375)=-7. 13 F(1.5)=-8. 14 F(1.625)=-9. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5. 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.75)=12. 33 F(4.125)=3. 35 F(4.25)=12. 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12. 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=12. 38 F(4.455)=9. 39 F(4.75)=12. 37 F(4.5)=12. 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7. 40 F(4.875)=6.		
3 F(0.25)=6.       2 F(0.05)=1.945125         4 F(0.375)=5.7       3 F(0.1)=1.881         5 F(0.5)=5.       4 F(0.15)=1.808375         6 F(0.625)=2.       5 F(0.2)=1.728         7 F(0.75)=0.       6 F(0.25)=1.640625         8 F(0.875)=-1.8       7 F(0.3)=1.547         9 F(1)=-3.       8 F(0.35)=1.447875         10 F(1.125)=-5.       9 F(0.4)=1.344         11 F(1.25)=-6.       10 F(0.45)=1.236125         12 F(1.375)=-7.       11 F(0.5)=1.125         13 F(1.5)=-8.       12 F(0.55)=1.011375         14 F(1.625)=-9.       13 F(0.6)=0.896         15 F(1.75)=-9.5       14 F(0.65)=0.779625         16 F(1.875)=-10.       15 F(0.7)=0.663         17 F(2)==9.5       16 F(0.75)=0.546875         18 F(2.125)=-9.       17 F(0.8)=0.319125         20 F(2.375)=-7.       19 F(0.9)=0.209         21 F(2.5)=-5.5       20 F(0.95)=0.102375         22 F(2.625)=-4.       21 F(1)=0.         23 F(2.75)=-2.       24 F(2.875)=0.         24 F(3.375)=11.       32 F(3.55)=12.         33 F(4)=12.5       34 F(4.125)=13.         35 F(4.25)=12.5       36 F(4.25)=12.         36 F(4.5)=10.5       38 F(4.625)=9.         39 F(4.75)=7.8       40 F(4.875)=6.		1 F(A)=2.
4 F(0.375)=5.7       3 F(0.1)=1.881         5 F(0.5)=5.       4 F(0.15)=1.808375         6 F(0.625)=2.       5 F(0.2)=1.728         7 F(0.75)=0.       6 F(0.25)=1.640625         8 F(0.875)=-1.8       7 F(0.3)=1.547         9 F(1)=-3.       8 F(0.35)=1.447875         10 F(1.125)=-5.       9 F(0.4)=1.344         11 F(1.25)=-6.       10 F(0.45)=1.236125         12 F(1.375)=-7.       11 F(0.5)=1.125         13 F(1.5)=-8.       12 F(0.55)=1.011375         14 F(1.625)=-9.       13 F(0.6)=0.896         15 F(1.75)=-9.5       14 F(0.65)=0.779625         16 F(1.875)=-10.       15 F(0.7)=0.663         17 F(2)==9.5       16 F(0.75)=0.432         19 F(2.125)=-9.       17 F(0.8)=0.432         19 F(2.25)=-8.5       18 F(0.85)=0.319125         20 F(2.375)=-7.       19 F(0.9)=0.209         21 F(2.5)=-5.5       20 F(0.95)=0.102375         22 F(2.625)=-4.       21 F(1)=0.         23 F(2.75)=-2.       24 F(3.375)=12.         24 F(3.375)=11.       32 F(3.5)=8.         30 F(3.625)=9.7       31 F(3.625)=12.         33 F(4.25)=12.5       34 F(4.125)=13.         35 F(4.25)=12.5       36 F(4.25)=10.5         38 F(4.625)=9.       39 F(4.75)=7.8		
5 F(0.5)=5.       4 F(0.15)=1.808375         6 F(0.625)=2.       5 F(0.2)=1.728         7 F(0.75)=0.       6 F(0.25)=1.640625         8 F(0.875)=-1.8       7 F(0.3)=1.547         9 F(1)=-3.       8 F(0.35)=1.447875         10 F(1.125)=-5.       19 F(0.4)=1.3344         11 F(1.25)=-6.       10 F(0.45)=1.236125         12 F(1.375)=-7.       11 F(0.5)=1.125         13 F(1.5)=-8.       12 F(0.55)=1.011375         14 F(1.625)=-9.       13 F(0.6)=0.896         15 F(1.75)=-9.5       14 F(0.65)=0.779625         16 F(1.875)=-10.       15 F(0.7)=0.663         17 F(2)=-9.5       16 F(0.75)=0.546875         18 F(2.125)=-9.       17 F(0.8)=0.432         19 F(2.25)=-8.5       18 F(0.85)=0.319125         20 F(2.375)=-7.       19 F(0.9)=0.209         21 F(2.5)=-5.5       20 F(0.95)=0.102375         22 F(2.625)=-4.       21 F(1)=0.         23 F(3.125)=4.       27 F(3.5)=6.         28 F(3.375)=7.       29 F(3.5)=8.         30 F(3.625)=9.7       31 F(3.625)=12.         33 F(4)=12.5       34 F(4.125)=13.         35 F(4.25)=12.5       36 F(4.25)=10.5         38 F(4.5)=10.5       38 F(4.625)=9.         39 F(4.75)=7.8       40 F(4.875)=6.		<del>-</del>
6 F(0.625)=2.       5 F(0.2)=1.728         7 F(0.75)=0.       6 F(0.25)=1.640625         8 F(0.875)=-1.8       7 F(0.3)=1.547         9 F(1)=-3.       8 F(0.35)=1.447875         10 F(1.125)=-5.       10 F(0.4)=1.344         11 F(1.25)=-6.       10 F(0.45)=1.236125         12 F(1.375)=-7.       11 F(0.5)=1.125         13 F(1.5)=-8.       12 F(0.55)=1.011375         14 F(1.625)=-9.       13 F(0.6)=0.896         15 F(1.75)=-9.5       14 F(0.65)=0.779625         16 F(1.875)=-10.       15 F(0.7)=0.663         17 F(2)=-9.5       16 F(0.75)=0.546875         18 F(2.125)=-9.       17 F(0.8)=0.432         19 F(2.25)=-8.5       18 F(0.85)=0.319125         20 F(2.375)=-7.       19 F(0.9)=0.209         21 F(2.5)=-5.5       20 F(0.95)=0.102375         22 F(2.625)=-4.       21 F(1)=0.         23 F(2.375)=2.       F=1.0833333333         25 F(3.125)=4.       F=1.0833333333         25 F(3.5)=3.       F=1.0833333333         36 F(4.25)=12.       F=1.0833333333         37 F(4.25)=12.       F=1.0833333333         38 F(4.25)=12.       F=1.0833333333		
7 F(0.75)=0. 6 F(0.25)=1.640625 8 f(0.875)=-1.8 7 F(0.3)=1.547 9 F(1)=-3. 8 F(0.35)=1.447875 10 F(1.125)=-5. 9 F(0.4)=1.344 11 F(1.25)=-6. 10 F(0.45)=1.236125 12 F(1.375)=-7. 11 F(0.5)=1.011375 14 F(1.625)=-9. 13 F(0.6)=0.896 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 14 F(0.65)=0.779625 16 F(1.875)=-10. 15 F(0.7)=0.663 17 F(2)=-9.5 16 F(0.75)=0.546875 18 F(2.125)=-9. 17 F(0.8)=0.432 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 18 F(0.85)=0.319125 20 F(2.375)=-7. 19 F(0.9)=0.209 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 20 F(0.9)=0.209 22 F(2.625)=-4. 21 F(1)=0. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. F=1.0833333333 25 F(3)=2. 26 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 8 30 F(3.625)=9. 7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
8 F(0.875)=-1.8       7 F(0.3=1.547         9 F(1)=-3.       8 F(0.35)=1.447875         10 F(1.125)=-5.       9 F(0.4)=1.344         11 F(1.25)=-6.       10 F(0.45)=1.236125         12 F(1.375)=-7.       11 F(0.5)=1.125         13 F(1.5)=-8.       12 F(0.55)=1.011375         14 F(1.625)=-9.       13 F(0.6)=0.896         15 F(1.75)=-9.5       14 F(0.65)=0.779625         16 F(1.875)=-10.       15 F(0.7)=0.663         17 F(2)=-9.5       16 F(0.75)=0.546875         18 F(2.125)=-9.       17 F(0.8)=0.432         19 F(2.25)=-8.5       18 F(0.85)=0.319125         20 F(2.375)=-7.       19 F(0.9)=0.209         21 F(2.5)=-5.5       20 F(0.95)=0.102375         22 F(2.625)=-4.       21 F(1)=0.         23 F(2.75)=-2.       24 F(2.875)=0.         25 F(3)=2.       5 F(3.125)=4.         27 F(3.25)=6.       28 F(3.375)=7.         29 F(3.5)=8.       30 F(3.625)=9.7         31 F(4.125)=13.       35 F(4.25)=12.5         36 F(4.25)=12.5       36 F(4.25)=10.5         38 F(4.625)=9.       39 F(4.75)=7.8         40 F(4.875)=6.	_	
9 F(1)=-3. 10 F(1.125)=-5. 11 F(1.25)=-6. 12 F(1.375)=-7. 13 F(1.5)=-8. 14 F(1.625)=-9. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 19 F(2.25)=-7. 11 F(0.8)=0.359=0.319125 12 F(2.875)=-0. 13 F(0.9)=0.209 15 F(1.75)=-2. 16 F(3.125)=-4. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(3.125)=-4. 19 F(3.25)=6. 19 F(3.25)=6. 19 F(3.25)=6. 19 F(3.25)=11. 19 F(3.25)=12. 19 F(3.5)=12. 19 F(3.5)=12. 19 F(3.5)=12. 19 F(4.5)=12.5 19 F(4.5)=12.5 19 F(4.5)=12.5 19 F(4.5)=12.5 19 F(4.75)=7. 19 F(3.75)=12. 19 F(3.75)=12. 19 F(3.75)=12. 19 F(3.75)=13. 10 F(3.75)=14. 11 F(0.35)=14. 12 F(3.875)=15. 13 F(4.25)=16. 14 F(0.65)=1.450=1.1344 15 F(0.75)=1.0465 16 F(0.75)=1.0465 17 F(0.8)=0.486 16 F(0.75)=0.546875 17 F(0.8)=0.432 19 F(0.9)=0.209 10 F(0.9)=0.209 10 F(0.9)=0.209 10 F(0.9)=0.309 10 F(0.9)=0.309 10 F(0.65)=0.319125 10 F(0.9)=0.309 10 F(0.9)=0.209 10 F(0.		
10 F(1.125)=-5. 11 F(1.25)=-6. 12 F(1.375)=-7. 13 F(1.5)=-8. 14 F(1.625)=-9. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 19 F(2.25)=-5.5 10 F(2.265)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=12. 33 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	8 F(0.875)=-1.8	7 F(0.3)=1.547
11 F(1.25)=-6. 12 F(1.375)=-7. 13 F(1.5)=-8. 14 F(1.625)=-9. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12. 36 F(4.475)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	9 F(1)=-3.	8 F(0.35)=1.447875
12 F(1.375)=-7. 13 F(1.5)=-8. 14 F(1.625)=-9. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=11. 32 F(3.375)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12. 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	10 F(1.125)=-5.	9 F(0.4)=1.344
12 F(1.375)=-7. 13 F(1.5)=-8. 14 F(1.625)=-9. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=11. 32 F(3.375)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12. 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.875)=6.	11 F(1.25)=-6.	10 F(0.45)=1.236125
13 F(1.5)=-8.  14 F(1.625)=-9.  15 F(1.75)=-9.5  16 F(1.875)=-10.  17 F(2)=-9.5  18 F(2.125)=-9.  19 F(2.25)=-8.5  20 F(2.375)=-7.  21 F(2.5)=-5.5  22 F(2.625)=-4.  23 F(2.75)=-2.  24 F(2.875)=0.  25 F(3.125)=6.  28 F(3.375)=7.  29 F(3.375)=7.  29 F(3.25)=8.  30 F(3.625)=9.7  31 F(3.75)=11.  32 F(3.875)=12.  33 F(4.125)=13.  35 F(4.25)=12.5  36 F(4.375)=12.  37 F(4.5)=10.5  38 F(4.625)=9.  39 F(4.75)=7.8  40 F(4.875)=6.		11 F(0.5)=1.125
14 F(1.625)=-9. 15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		12 F(0.55)=1.011375
15 F(1.75)=-9.5 16 F(1.875)=-10. 17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
16 F(1.875)=-10.  17 F(2)=-9.5  18 F(2.125)=-9.  19 F(2.25)=-8.5  20 F(2.375)=-7.  21 F(2.5)=-5.5  22 F(2.625)=-4.  23 F(2.75)=-2.  24 F(2.875)=0.  25 F(3.125)=4.  27 F(3.25)=6.  28 F(3.375)=7.  29 F(3.5)=8.  30 F(3.625)=9.7  31 F(3.75)=11.  32 F(3.875)=12.  33 F(4.125)=13.  35 F(4.25)=12.5  36 F(4.375)=12.  37 F(4.5)=10.5  38 F(4.625)=9.  39 F(4.75)=7.8  40 F(4.875)=6.		· · · -
17 F(2)=-9.5 18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
18 F(2.125)=-9. 19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
19 F(2.25)=-8.5 20 F(2.375)=-7. 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
20 F(2.375)=-7. 19 F(0.9)=0.209 21 F(2.5)=-5.5 20 F(0.95)=0.102375 22 F(2.625)=-4. 21 F(1)=0. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. F=1.083333333  25 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
21 F(2.5)=-5.5 22 F(2.625)=-4. 23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3)=2. 26 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	19 F(2.25)=-8.5	
22 F(2.625)=-4. 21 F(1)=0.  23 F(2.75)=-2. F=1.083333333  25 F(3.125)=4. F=1.0833333333  25 F(3.125)=6. R=1.0833333333  27 F(3.25)=6. R=1.0833333333  28 F(3.625)=9. R=1.0833333333  29 F(3.625)=9. R=1.0833333333  20 F(3.625)=9. R=1.0833333333  21 F(1)=0. R=1.08333333333  22 F(3.925)=4. R=1.08333333333  23 F(3.625)=6. R=1.08333333333  24 F(3.625)=9. R=1.08333333333  25 F(3.625)=9. R=1.08333333333  26 F(3.625)=9. R=1.08333333333  27 F(3.625)=9. R=1.08333333333  28 F(3.625)=9. R=1.08333333333  29 F(3.625)=9. R=1.08333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.08333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.0833333333  21 F(1)=0. R=1.08333333333  22 F(1.825)=1.08333333333  23 F(1.825)=1.08333333333  24 F(1.825)=1.08333333333  25 F(3.625)=1.08333333333  26 F(3.625)=1.08333333333  27 F(3.625)=1.0833333333  28 F(3.625)=1.08333333333  29 F(3.625)=1.08333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.08333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.083333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.08333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.083333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.08333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.083333333333  20 F(1.825)=1.0833333333	20 F(2.375)=-7.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
23 F(2.75)=-2. 24 F(2.875)=0. 25 F(3)=2. 26 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	21 F(2.5)=-5.5	
24 F(2.875)=0. F=1.083333333  25 F(3)=2. 26 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	22 F(2.625)=-4.	21 F(1)=0.
24 F(2.875)=0. F=1.083333333  25 F(3)=2. 26 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	23 F(2.75)=-2.	
25 F(3)=2. 26 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		F=1.083333333
26 F(3.125)=4. 27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
27 F(3.25)=6. 28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	<del></del> · · · - · - ·	
28 F(3.375)=7. 29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
29 F(3.5)=8. 30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
30 F(3.625)=9.7 31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
31 F(3.75)=11. 32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
32 F(3.875)=12. 33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
33 F(4)=12.5 34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
34 F(4.125)=13. 35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	<b></b>	
35 F(4.25)=12.5 36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.		
36 F(4.375)=12. 37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	34 F(4.125)=13.	
37 F(4.5)=10.5 38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	35 F(4.25)=12.5	
38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	36 F(4.375)=12.	
38 F(4.625)=9. 39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	37 F(4.5)=10.5	
39 F(4.75)=7.8 40 F(4.875)=6.	38 F(4.625)=9.	
40 F(4.875)=6.	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
T1   \W/-T1		
	TA 1 (0)-TE	

F=8.291666667

# KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE

<When the values are input>

Step No.	Key Ing	out	Display	Remarks
1	DEF A		INP. = 1/CAL. = 2 ?	Selection of data input or equation input
2	1	ENTER	A = _	Waiting for the starting point of the integration interval
3	Ø	ENTER	B =	Waiting for the ending point of the integration interval
4	5	ENTER	N = _	Waiting for the integration interval division number
5	40	ENTER	F(Ø) =	Waiting for the data to be input
			?	
6	4	ENTER	F (Ø.125) =	
			?	
7	5.5	ENTER	F (Ø.25) =	
			?	
		:	:	
	6	ENTER	F(5) =	
			?	
	4	ENTER	>	

### <Data revision>

Step No.	Key Input		Display	Remarks
1	DEF B		REVISION NO. ? = _	Waiting for the revision number input
2	3	ENTER	NEW VALUE = _	Waiting for the revision value input
3	6	ENTER	REVISION NO. ? = _	
4		ENTER	ALL PRINT (Y/N)_	
5	Y	ENTER	>	All of the data printed out
	N	ENTER	>	Finished without printing

(to be continued to DEF C )

# **KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE**

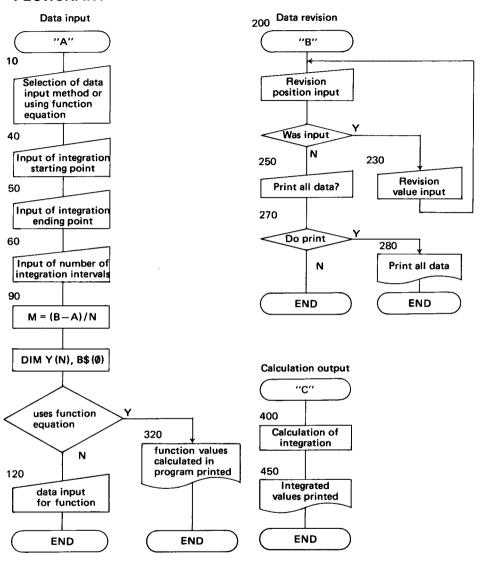
<When the function equation is used>

Step No.	Key Input		Display	Remarks
1	DEF A		INP. = 1/CAL. = 2 ?	Waiting for the data input method or the equation input method of calculation
2	2	ENTER	A = _	Waiting for the integration starting point input
3	Ø	ENTER	B =	Waiting for the integration ending point input
4	1	ENTER	N =	Waiting for the integration interval division number
5	20	ENTER		Prints the calculations done to find the function values using the function equation as the base
			>	

# <Final procedure in both cases>

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF C		Integrated values printed
		>	

### **FLOWCHART**



# PROGRAM LISTING

OG	<b>~</b>	IAI	LI	3111	VG.
10:	INPL	CLEA 7 7 7 1	NΡ.	WAIT =1/0/	0: AL.=2
20: 30:	END Je 7	n=1	) <b>+</b> (9	=217	>1
40:	INPL	T %	4= " ;	A:LPf	RINT
50:	IMPL	T "1	}= ";	B:LP:	RINT
70:	TF N	;3 /T ″r //2⟨)	4=";   IN	N T (Nz	(2)
	GOTO	1 50 NT '			
90:	M=(∃ \$(0)	(-A)	N:D	IM Y: 0≈2	
100:	320 FOR F("+	I≠0 STR≇	T0	ฟ:B\$( ")="	(Ø)="
110:	PAUS	E B4	(0)		iT
	19 I N	6 "1	nn"	LP#10 ;[+1; G ;Y(	v v:
	=L+M	: 607	0 1		
140:	MEXT End	Ι			
	40.2	=";H	: 60	REVIS TO 22	'й
210:0 220:0	50TO IF (	250 ⊬<≃0	  )+(+	H>N+1	)=1
230:	30TO INPU	200 T "N	EW 1	VALUE	?="
	:Ү(Н "### «:м»	-1): ";H; /// /	THE.	VALUE INT U (";ST ")=";	R\$ (
	a≠m≠ JSIN BB	6 ; Y	//: (H-:	)- , 1):60	T0 2
240:( 250:	SOTO Inpu	230 T "A	ı dil f	PRINT	· (YZ
270:1	⊝i IF W	GOTO ≸="N	250  * El	+(₩\$= 0 4D	
280:	_PRI ′;a:	NT " Lpri	":LF	PRINT "B=";	"A=
290:	_PRI 1=(B	NT 9 -A)/	N=":	¦N =A∶FC	R I=
300:L	a TO LPRI	N NT U	SIN	5 °##	#";(
	= " }	USIN	G 👫	l(I)	
320:1	PRI	NT "	":F0	I:ENI DR I=	0 TO
330:	 _PRI [+1)	L.00 NT U ;" F	30B  SIN(  (":9	900 5 ″## 3TR\$	#";( L;")
340:	="; {(I)	USIN	۱G ;۱	Y Y:NEX	
490*	EHD "C":	S=Y(	0):(	_=S:F	OR I
:	=0 T _ET	U N: S=Y(	1F (	B>Y(I	)

410:NEXT I
420:S=Y(0)+Y(N)
430:FOR I=1 TO N-1:IF I/
2<> INT (I/2) LET K=
4:GOTO 450
440:K=2
450:\$=\$+K*Y(I):NEXT I:\$=
S*M/3:LPRINT "":
LPRINT "F=";S:END
900:Y=((X-2)*X-1)*X+2
910:RETURN
1000:END

859 bytes

# **MEMORY CONTENTS**

Α	Integration interval starting point
В	Integration interval ending point
С	
D	
E	
F	
G	
Н	$\checkmark$
ı	✓
J	
К	Term coefficient during integration
L	$\sqrt{}$ , Max. value of Y ( $i$ )
М	h
N	Number of divisions
0	Flag for inputting or using equation
Р	
Q	
R	
s	$\sqrt{\ }$ , Min. value of Y (i), Integration value
Т	
U	
V	
W\$	V
×	√ Function equation X
Υ	Function equation Y
Z	
Y (N)	Input data (function value)
B\$ (Ø)	V

Program Title: SOFTLANDING GAME

### OVERVIEW

This game involves landing a rocket, with only a limited amount of fuel, as softly as possible. The rocket is in free fall. The engine is used to slow down the free falling rocket. If ignition takes place too soon or too much fuel is used, then the rocket is thrust back out into space and becomes dust around the planet.

If all the fuel is burned up, the rocket hits the planet and blows up.

The aim is to land the rocket as softly as possible by controlling the engines while watching how much fuel is burned.

#### CONTENTS

Gravity is set to be 5 m/(unit time)<sup>2</sup>.

If 5 units of fuel per a unit time are burnt, then gravity is offset.

Equations

$$H = H_0 + V_0 t + \frac{1}{2} a t^2$$

$$V = V_0 + a t$$

$$H : height$$

$$V : speed$$

a : gravitational Fo: initial fuel  $V^2 = V_0^2 + 2aH$ 

Ho: initial height

Vo: initial speed

acceleration

 $H_0 = 500$ ,  $V_0 = -50$ ,  $F_0 = 200$   $V_0$ : initial speed

The initial height, initial fuel level, and the wait time is stored in line 30 as data. By changing these values the above variables can be changed.

#### INSTRUCTIONS

- 1. It is started by pressing  $\overline{DEF}$   $\overline{A}$  . Press  $\overline{O} \sim \overline{9}$  keys to adjust the amount of fuel used to land the rocket.
- 2. When all the fuel is burned up, "FALLING" is displayed.

# KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF A	***START***	
2	Keys 0 ~ 9 designate fuel burned in unit time	500 -50 200 0	Height, speed, fuel left and fuel burnt in unit time are displayed.
	9	452 –46 191 9	
	:		
		Repeat	
	(If successful)	SUCCESS !!	
		FUEL F = 15	
	(If failed)	GOOD BYE!!	
		REPLAY (Y/N)?	Wait for input on whether you wish to play again
	Y		Play again
	N	>	End

# PROGRAM LISTING

10:"A":WAIT 50:CLEAR : USING :S=-50:A=0:D\$=
v v
20:BEEP 3:PRINT " *** START ***"
30:DATA "WAIT=",50,"FUE
L=",200,"HEIGHT=",50 0
40:RESTORE
50:READ B\$,W,B\$,F,B\$,H
60:WAIT W 70:IF F=0 IF S<0 PRINT
USING "####";H;S;" F
ALLING":GOTO 90
80:PRINT USING "####";H
;s;F;C
90:BEEP 1:D\$≈"":D\$=
INKEY\$ 100:IF D\$="" LET C=A:
60TO 130
110:C=VAL ·D\$
120:A=C
130:IF C>F LET C=F
140:F=F-C:X=C-5:H=H+S+X/
2:S=S+X
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5 BEEP 5:PRINT "SUCCES !!":GOTO 180 170:BEEP 3:PRINT "GOOD B
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5 BEEP 5:PRINT "SUCCES !!":GOTO 180 170:BEEP 3:PRINT "GOOD B Y !!":GOTO 190
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5 BEEP 5:PRINT "SUCCES !!":GOTO 180 170:BEEP 3:PRINT "GOOD B Y !!":GOTO 190 180:WAIT 150:PRINT USING
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5 BEEP 5:PRINT "SUCCES !!":GOTO 180 170:BEEP 3:PRINT "GOOD B Y !!":GOTO 190 180:WAIT 150:PRINT USING "####";"FUEL F=";F
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5 BEEP 5:PRINT "SUCCES !!":GOTO 180 170:BEEP 3:PRINT "GOOD B Y !!":GOTO 190 180:WAIT 150:PRINT USING "####";"FUEL F=";F
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5 BEEP 5:PRINT "SUCCES !!":GOTO 180 170:BEEP 3:PRINT "GOOD B Y !!":GOTO 190 180:WAIT 150:PRINT USING "####";"FUEL F=";F
150:IF H>5 GOTO 70 160:IF H>0 AND ABS S<5 BEEP 5:PRINT "SUCCES !!":GOTO 180 170:BEEP 3:PRINT "GOOD B Y !!":GOTO 190 180:WAIT 150:PRINT USING "####";"FUEL F=";F 190:WAIT 50:PRINT "REPLA Y (Y/N) ?":Z\$=INKEY\$

220:IF Z\$="Y" GOTO 10

230:END

# **MEMORY CONTENTS**

A	
C Fuel burned  D\$ Fuel burned  E  F Initial fuel level, fuel left	
D\$ Fuel burned  E F Initial fuel level, fuel left	
E F Initial fuel level, fuel left	
F Initial fuel level, fuel left	
Tittler Teer Tever, Teer Tert	
G	
[u	
H Initial height, height	
1	
J	
К	
L	
М	
N	
0	
Р	
a	
R	
S Speed	
Т	
U	
V	
W Wait time	
x 🗸	
Y	
Z\$ ✓	

457 bytes.

Program Title: TYPING PRACTICE

#### **OVERVIEW**

Quick key operation!

How fast and accurate is your typing?

If you practice with this program, it will make programming much easier for you. Improve your skill!

### CONTENTS (such as calculation contents)

The number of characters (4  $\sim$  6) is randomly chosen.

The character arrangement (A  $\sim$  Z) is done randomly.

The allotted time depends on the number of characters and the grade level.

3 is the shortest time allotment while 1 is the longest.

#### INSTRUCTIONS

After the buzzer sounds 4 to 6 characters will be displayed. You are to type in the same characters within the allotted time.

If they are all correct, you get 10 coints.

If more than half are correct, you get 5 points.

After the allotted time is over, the next problem is displayed. The allotted time depends on the grade, which has three levels (1, 2, 3).

3 is the shortest time allotment while 1 is the longest.

Point competition is done within the same grade category.

There are 10 problems, making the maximum score 100 points.

# **KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE**

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF Z	GRADE (1, 2, 3)?	Grade input
2	1 ENTER	AZBDC	
3	A	AZBDC A	
4	Z	AZBDC AZ	
	:	:	
	:	YOUR - SCORE = 80	After the 10 questions are answered the score is displayed
		YOUR SCORE BEST	If your score is higher than the high score the guidance is displayed
		>	END
1	DEF A	HIGH-SCORE=80	When you want to play in the same grade
		BWVS	
2	В	BWVS B	
	:		
	<u>:</u>	YOUR - SCORE = 60	
		>	END

### PROGRAM LISTING

10:°Z°:CLEAR :DIM B\$(5) ,C\$(5):RANDOM
15:INPUT "GRADE(1,2,3)?
";L:WAIT 0
17:IF (L=1)+(L=2)+(L=3) <>1 THEN 15
18:GOTO 30
20:"A":WAIT 0:P=0:PAUSE
"HIGH-SCORE=";X
30:FOR S=1 TO 10
40:B=RND 4+2:Y\$="":R=
INT (B/2) 50:FOR C=0 TO B-1:C\$(C)
= " " = " " = " = " = " = " = " = " = "
60:D=RND 26:B\$(C)=CHR\$
(D+&40):Y\$=Y\$+CHR\$ (
B+%40):NEXT C:A≸=""
70:BEEP 3:E=0:WAIT 30:
USING "&&&&&&& <b>"</b>
80:FOR W=1 TO B*10/L: PRINT Y\$;A\$:IF E=B
LET W=B*20/L:GOTO 10
LET W=B*20/L:GOTO 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$(
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E)
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10:
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10: 60T0 150
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10: GOTO 150 140:P=P+5
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10: GOTO 150 140:P=P+5 150:NEXT S:USING :BEEP 3
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR N=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10: GOTO 150 140:P=P+5 150:NEXT S:USING :BEEP 3 :PAUSE "YOUR-SCORE="
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10: GOTO 150 140:P=P+5 150:NEXT S:USING :BEEP 3 :PAUSE "YOUR-SCORE=" ;P
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$:IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR.W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10: GOTO 150 140:P=P+5 150:NEXT S:USING :BEEP 3 :PAUSE "YOUR-SCORE=" ;P 160:IF P>X LET X=P:WAIT 190:PRINT "YOUR SCOR
LET W=B*20/L:60T0 10 0 85:C\$(E)=INKEY\$ :IF C\$( E)="" THEN 100 87:A\$=A\$+C\$(E) 90:E=E+1 100:NEXT W:Q=0 110:FOR W=0 TO B-1:IF B\$ (W)=C\$(W) LET Q=Q+1 120:NEXT W:IF Q<=R THEN 150 130:IF Q=B LET P=P+10: GOTO 150 140:P=P+5 150:NEXT S:USING :BEEP 3 :PAUSE "YOUR-SCORE=" ;P

#### 491 bytes

# MEMORY CONTENTS

A\$	$\checkmark$
В	√
С	Loop counter
D	$\sqrt{}$
E	$\checkmark$
F	
G	
Н	
1	
J	
К	
L	Grade
М	
N	
0	
Р	Score
Q	√
R	✓
S	Loop counter
Т	
U	
V	
w	Loop counter
×	High score
Y\$	<b>√</b>
Z	
B\$ (5)	✓
Č\$ (5)	<b>√</b>

Program Title: TOTAL AMOUNT TABLES

This is a very handy and easy total sum program. Input codes or item name at random and correspond data, and find the sum and percentage for each code (item), then print the total sum at the end.

### **INSTRUCUCIONS**

1) **DEF Z** : [Registration of item names]

Input the titles in the order of their codes.

2) **DEF** A: [Input sum data]

By inputting the code numbers, the name of the items will be indicated, then input data. If the code number is unknown, input the item name with " $\star$ " at top and the code number

will be found.

3) **DEF S** : [Print out of summation results]

Each of the totals for codes (items) will be summed up and the total result and percentage will be indicated. First input wheter the percentage needs to be printed-out or not.

#### **EXAMPLE**

Code table

Code	Item	
1	PC-1245	
2	PC-1251	
3	PA-7050	
4	EL-331	
5	EL-332	
6	WN-106	
7	CT-660	
8	EL-550	
9	CS-2302	
10	EA-11E	
11	EA-150	
12	EA-850C	

Input data

Code	Price	Quantity	Sum
_ 4	5800	3	
3			39,800
8	14,800	15	
9	19,800	20	
11	3,300	40	
12	800	18	
8	14,800	20	
7			178,000
8			74,000
3			597,000
12	800	99	
2	29,800	4	

Remark: The prices have not concernd with actual prices.

# PRINT OUTPUT

Example w	ith percenta	ge	Example wi	thout perce	ntage
•	PC-1245		1	PC-1245	
2	90-1251	0.00%	2	PC-1251	Ø
_	119200	5.51%	3	2A-7050	119200
3	PA-7050 636800	29.41%	2	: M 1000	636800
4	EL-331		4	EL-331	17400
5	17400 EL-332	0.80%	5	EL-332	
_	9	0.00%	6	WN-106	Ø
6	WN-106 0	0.00%	_		0
7	CT-660		7	CT-660	178000
8	178000 EL-550	8.22%	8	EL-550	
q	592000 CS-2302	27.34%	9	CS-2302	592000
7	396000	18.29%			396000
10	EA-11E 0	0.00%	. 10	EA-11E	Ø
11	EA-150	0.004	11	EA-150	132000
12	132000 EA-850C	6.10%	12	EA-850C	727000
• •	93600	4.32%			93600
TOTAL		2165000	TOTAL		2165000

# KEY OPERATION PROCEDURE

# < Registration of the item names >

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF Z	1	
		ITEM NAME =	Waiting for the input of code No. 1
2	PC-1245 ENTER	2	
		ITEM NAME = _	Waiting for the input of code No. 2
3	PC-1251 ENTER	3	
	:	Input in the same manner	
13	EA-850C ENTER	13	
		ITEM NAME =	
14	ENTER	>	Finish by pressing the ENTER key only.

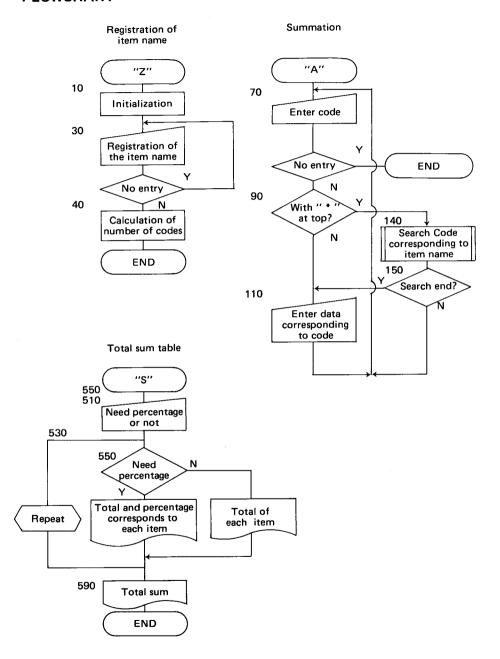
# < Data input>

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF A	SUMMATION	Title indication
		CODE = _	
2	4 ENTER	EL-331	
	i	DATA = _	
3	5800 * 3 ENTER	CODE = _	
4	3 ENTER	PA-7050	
		DATA = _	
5	39800 ENTER	CODE = _	
6	*EL-550 ENTER	8	Input this way if the code number is unknown
		DATA = _	
		Input in the same manner	
25	29800 * 4 ENTER	CODE = _	
26	ENTER	>	Finish by pressing the ENTER key only.

# < Print out the results>

Step No.	Key Input	Display	Remarks
1	DEF S	SUMMATION LIST	Title display
		PERCENT. (Y/N) _	
2	Y ENTER		Output the summation result with percentage
	N ENTER		Output the summation result without percentage

### **FLOWCHART**



# PROGRAM LISTING

10:"Z":CLEAR :DIM C\$(50 )*10,D(50)
20:I=0
30:I=I+1:PAUSE STR\$ I:
BEEP 1: INPUT "ITEM N AME=";C\$(I):GOTO 30
40:N=I-1
50:END
60:"A":PAUSE "SUMMATION
v
70:INPUT "CODE=";C\$(0): GOTO 90
80:END
90:IF LEFT\$ (C\$(0),1)="
*" GOTO 140
100:I=VAL C\$(0):PAUSE C\$ (I)
110:D=0:INPUT "DATA=";D
120:D(I)=D(I)+D:E=E+D
130:GOTO 70
140:GOSUB 300
150:IF G=0 PAUSE "NO REG
ISTRATION": GOTO 70
160:I=G:PAUSE STR\$ I
170:GOTO 110
300:F=LEN C\$(0)-1:C\$(0)=
RIGHT\$ (C\$(0),F):G=0
310:FOR I=1 TO N
320:IF C\$(0)=LEFT\$ (C\$(I
),F) LET G=I:I=N
330:NEXT I
340:RETURN
500:"S":PAUSE "SUMMATION
LIST"
510:INPUT "PERCENT.(Y/N)
";C\$ .
520:IF (C\$="Y")+(C\$="N")
<>1 GOTO 510
530:FOR I=1 TO N
540:LPRINT USING "###";I
;" ";C\$(I)
550:IF C\$="N" LPRINT "
"; USING "#
##########";D(I):
GOTO 580
560:H=D(I)/E*100:H= INT
(H*100+.5)/100
**************************************

570:LPRINT " "; USING
"##########";D(I);"
"; USING "###.##";H
; "%"
580:NEXT I
590:LPRINT "":LPRINT "TO
TAL "; USING "#
###############
600:END

660 bytes

# **MEMORY CONTENTS**

Α	
В	
C\$	$\checkmark$
D	Price (Input Data)
E	Total
F	<b>√</b>
G	
Н	Percentage
ı	√
J	
К	
L	
М	
N	Number
0	
Р	
Q	
R	
s	
Т	
C	
٧	
W	
Х	
Y	
Z	
C\$(50) *10	Item name
D(50)	Price of each item
C\$(Ø)	Code No.

Calculation Title:

### LOAN CALCULATION

For most people, expensive goods are too difficult to buy directly, so here we show you a simple loan calculation.

$$P = (PT - R) \times \frac{i}{1 - \frac{1}{(1+i)^n}}$$

Here P: loan rate

PT: price

R: deposit

n: number of payments

*i*: monthly interest

### **EXAMPLE**

What is the monthly repayment when buying an NC machine costing 550,000 with a deposit of 100,000, a monthly interest of 1.5% and 20 payments?

Answer: PT = 550,000

R = 100.000

n = 20 times

= 1.5% = 0.015

Calculate the required money as follows;

550000 - 100000 D X 0.015 ÷ ( 1 - ( 1 + 0.015 ) yx

26210.58114

Therefore the monthly repayment is approximately 26,210.

# INDEX

	70	OF 1260	96
&	70	CE-126P	171
*	79 70	CHR\$	121
+	79	CLEAR	108
<del>-</del>	79	CLOAD	108
/	79	CLOAD?	
^_	79	Clear key	19, 187
$\sqrt{}$	169	CONT	110
< <b>▲</b>	80	COS	164
◀	49	CSAVE	111
<=	80	CUR	165
<>	80	Cursor	11
=	80	Cassette tape	104
>	80	Commands	86, 105, 108
<b>&gt;</b>	49	DATA	122
>=	80	DEF key	94
π	162	DEG	165
<b>↑</b>	88	DEGREE	123
<b>↓</b>	88	DELete key	89
A() variables	77	DIM	124
ABS	163	Direct calculation feature	68
ACS	163	DMS	165
AHC	163	Debugging	174
AHS	164	Display	22
AHT	164	END	126
ALL RESET	12	ENTER key	49
AND	81	EXP	165
AREAD	118	Edition calculations	49
ASC	171	Editing programs	88
ASCII	178	Error Messages	176
ASN	164	Expressions	79
ATN	164	FACT	
Array variables	74	Fixed variables	72
Auto off (Auto Power Off)	17	FORTOSTEP	127
BASIC key	9	Formatting output	180
BASIC mode	10	Functions	83, 107, 162
BEEP	120	GOSUB	129
Batteries	14	GOTO	112, 130
CA key	187	GRAD	131
CAL key	9	Hard cover	6
CAL mode	9, 18	HCS	166
CAL House	9, 10	,	.00

HSN	166	PAUSE	144
HTN	166	PI	162
IFTHEN	132	PRINT	146
INKEY\$	162	PRINT#	148
INPUT	133	PROgram mode	9
INPUT#	135	Parenthesis	30, 56, 83
INSert key	51, 89	POL	167
INT	166	Printer	96
LEFT\$	171	Priority (CAL mode)	32
LEN	171	Program	85
LET	138	Pseudovariables	162
LIST	113	RADIAN	150
LLIST	114	RANDOM	151
LN	167	RCP	167
LOG	167	READ	152
LPRINT	139	REC	168
Labelled programs	94	Relational expression	80
Last answer feature	60	REM	153
Limits of numbers	60	RESET	12
Line numbers	85	RESTORE	154
Linear regression	42	RETURN	155
Logical expressions	81	RIGHT\$	172
MEM	162	RND	168
MID\$	172	RUN	117
Maintenance	175	RUN mode	9
Manual calculation	48	Range of numbers	60
Masks	180	Relational expressions	80
Memory Protection	93	ROT	169
NEW	115	Scientific notation	59
NEXT	141	SGN	169
NOT	81	SHIFT key	18
Numeric expression	79	Simple variable	73
Numeric function	163	SIN	169
Numeric variables	72	SQR	169
ON (Start up)	17	SQU	169
One-variable statistics	41	STOP	156
ONGOSUB	142	STR\$	172
ONGOTO	143	Statements	85
OR	81	Statistical calculation	38
Operator priority (BASIC) mod		String expressions	79
Operators	79	String function	171
$P \leftrightarrow NP$	96	String variables	72
PASS	116	Subroutines	129

#### Index

TAN	170	Two-variable statistics	42
TEN	170	USING	159
TROFF	157	VAL	172
TRON	158	Variables	71
Tape Recorder	98	Verbs	85, 106, 118
Template	94	WAIT	161
Troubleshooting	173		

# **SHARP CORPORATION**

OSAKA, JAPAN

Scanned by Dale